



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

01. Ship Construction (Total number of hours - 42)

RefNo	<i>Knowledge, Understanding and Proficiency</i>	DURATION	COURSE NOTE REF. NO
1.1	Manoeuvre and handle a ship in all conditions		
1.1.1	Use of propulsion and manoeuvring systems		
1.1.1.1	Use of propulsion and manoeuvring systems including various types of rudder		
1.1.1.1.1	describes various types of rudders, including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Flap rudder (commonly known as the “Becker rudder”) - Rotor rudder (commonly known as the “Jastram rudder”) - T-shaped rudder (commonly known as the “Single Schilling rudder”) - Twin Schilling rudders and explains their advantages with regard to ship handling 		
1.2	Control trim, stability and stress		
1.2.1	Understanding of fundamental principles of ship construction and the theories and factors affecting trim and stability and measures necessary to preserve trim and stability		
1.2.1.1	Ship building materials		
1.2.1.1.1	states that steels are alloys of iron, with properties dependent upon the type and amounts of alloying materials used		
1.2.1.1.2	states that the specifications of shipbuilding steels are laid down by classification societies		
1.2.1.1.3	states that shipbuilding steel is tested and graded by classification society surveyors, who stamp it with approval marks		
1.2.1.1.4	explains that mild steel, graded A to E, is used for most parts of the ship		
1.2.1.1.5	states why higher tensile steel may be used in areas of high stress, such as the sheer strake		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

1.2.1.1.6	explains that the use of higher tensile steel in place of mild steel results in a saving of weight for the same strength		
1.2.1.1.7	explains what is meant by: <ul style="list-style-type: none">- tensile strength- ductility- hardness- toughness		
1.2.1.1.8	defines strain as extension divided by original length		
1.2.1.1.9	sketches a stress-strain curve for mild steel		
1.2.1.1.10	explains: <ul style="list-style-type: none">- yield point- ultimate tensile stress- modulus of elasticity		
1.2.1.1.11	explains that toughness is related to the tendency to brittle fracture		
1.2.1.1.12	explains that stress fracture may be initiated by a small crack or notch in a plate		
1.2.1.1.13	states that cold conditions increase the chances of brittle fracture		
1.2.1.1.14	states why mild steel is unsuitable for the very low temperatures involved in the containment of liquefied gases		
1.2.1.1.15	lists examples where castings or forgings are used in ship construction		
1.2.1.1.16	explains the advantages of the use of aluminium alloys in the construction of superstructures		
1.2.1.1.17	states that aluminium alloys are tested and graded by classification society surveyors		
1.2.1.1.18	explains how strength is preserved in aluminium superstructures in the event of fire		
1.2.1.1.19	describes the special precautions against corrosion that are needed where aluminium alloy is connected to steelwork		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

1.2.1.2	Welding		
1.2.1.2.1	describes the process of manual electric arc welding		
1.2.1.2.2	explains the purpose of flux during welding		
1.2.1.2.3	describes briefly the automatic welding processes, electro-slag, TIG and MIG		
1.2.1.2.4	describes butt, lap and fillet weld		
1.2.1.2.5	describes the various preparations of a plate edge for welding		
1.2.1.2.6	explains what is meant by a full-penetration fillet weld		
1.2.1.2.7	explains what is meant by 'single pass', 'multipass' and 'back' run		
1.2.1.2.8	explains how welding can give rise to distortion and describes measures which are taken to minimize it		
1.2.1.2.9	describes the use of tack welding		
1.2.1.2.10	describes weld faults: <ul style="list-style-type: none">- lack of fusion- no inter-run penetration- lack of reinforcement- lack of root penetration- slag inclusion- porosity- overlap- undercut		
1.2.1.2.11	states that classification societies require tests on weld materials and electrodes before approving them		
1.2.1.2.12	discusses the electrode type and process of welding high tensile steels		
1.2.1.2.13	describes gas cutting of metals		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

1.2.1.2.14	briefly describes the testing of welds: <ul style="list-style-type: none">- visual- radiographic- ultrasonic- magnetic particle- dye penetrant		
1.2.1.3	Bulk heads		
1.2.1.3.1	states that transverse bulkheads serve to subdivide a ship against flooding and spread of fire, to support decks and superstructures and to resist racking stresses		
1.2.1.3.2	distinguishes between watertight, non-watertight and oil-tight or tank bulkheads		
1.2.1.3.3	defines: <ul style="list-style-type: none">- margin line- bulkhead deck- watertight- weathertight		
1.2.1.3.4	states that cargo ships must have: <ul style="list-style-type: none">- a collision bulkhead, watertight up to the freeboard deck, positioned not less than 5% of the length of the ship (or 10 metres, whichever is the less) and not more than 8% of the length of the ship from the forward perpendicular- an afterpeak bulkhead enclosing the stem tube and rudder trunk in a watertight compartment- a bulkhead at each end of the machinery space		
1.2.1.3.5	explains that cargo ships require additional bulkheads, as laid down by classification society rules, according to their length or as required by SOLAS		
1.2.1.3.6	describes the construction of a watertight bulkhead and its attachments to sides, deck and tank top		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

1.2.1.3.7	describes how watertightness is maintained where bulkheads are pierced by longitudinal, beams or pipes		
1.2.1.3.8	states the rule regarding penetrations of the collision bulkhead		
1.2.1.3.9	states that watertight floors are fitted directly below main watertight bulkheads		
1.2.1.3.10	explains that oil-tight bulkheads and bulkheads forming boundaries of tanks are built with heavier scantlings than watertight bulkheads		
1.2.1.3.11	describes how bulkheads are tested for tightness		
1.2.1.3.12	gives examples of non-watertight bulkheads		
1.2.1.3.13	explains the purpose of wash bulkheads in cargo tanks or deep tanks		
1.2.1.3.14	states longitudinal bulkheads serve to subdivide liquid cargoes, provide additional longitudinal support and reduce free surface effect		
1.2.1.3.15	distinguishes between Cofferdam, Flat plate and Corrugated bulkhead construction		
1.2.1.3.16	explains the use of cross ties in tanker construction		
1.2.1.4	Watertight and weathertight doors (Explains the general design and construction features of SOLAS compliant vessels in terms of watertight integrity)		
1.2.1.4.1	explains the possible effects of sustaining damage when in a less favourable condition		
1.2.1.4.2	states that the number of openings in watertight bulkheads of passenger ships should be reduced to the minimum compatible with the design and working of the ship		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

1.2.1.4.3	categorizes watertight doors as: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - class 1 - hinged doors - class 2 - hand-opened sliding doors - class 3 - sliding doors which are power-operated as well as hand-operated 		
1.2.1.4.4	states that all types of watertight doors should be capable of being closed with the ship listed to 15° either way		
1.2.1.4.5	describes with sketches the arrangement of a power-operated sliding watertight door		
1.2.1.4.6	describes with sketches a hinged watertight door, showing the means of securing it		
1.2.1.4.7	states that hinged watertight doors are only permitted above a deck at least 2.0 metres above the deepest subdivision load line		
	Cargo Vessels		
1.2.1.4.8	distinguishes between ships of Type 'A' and Type 'B' for the purposes of computation of freeboard		
1.2.1.4.9	describes the extent of damage which a Type 'A' ship of over 150 metres length should withstand		
1.2.1.4.10	explains that a Type 'A' ship of over 150 metres length is described as a 'one-compartment ship'		
1.2.1.4.11	describes the requirements for survivability of Type 'B' ships with reduced freeboard assigned		
1.2.1.4.12	summarizes the equilibrium conditions regarded as satisfactory after flooding		
	All ships		
1.2.1.4.13	states that openings in watertight bulkheads		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

1.2.1.4.14	must be fitted with watertight doors explains that weathertight doors in superstructure openings are similar to hinged watertight doors		
1.2.1.4.15	states that drills for the operating of watertight doors, side scuttles, valves and other closing mechanisms must be held weekly		
1.2.1.4.16	states the requirements for watertight openings to be closed at sea		
1.2.1.4.17	discusses procedures for ensuring that all watertight openings are closed		
1.2.1.4.18	states that all watertight doors in main transverse bulkheads, in use at sea, must be operated daily		
1.2.1.4.19	states that watertight doors and their mechanisms and indicators, all valves the closing of which is necessary to make a compartment watertight and all valves for damage-control cross-connections must be inspected at sea at least once per week		
1.2.1.4.20	states that records of drills and inspections are to be entered in the log, with a record of any defects found		
1.2.1.5	Corrosion and its prevention		
1.2.1.5.1	explains what is meant by corrosion		
1.2.1.5.2	explains what is meant by corrosion of metals and gives examples of where this is likely to occur		
1.2.1.5.3	describes the formation of a corrosion cell and defines anode, cathode and electrolyte		
1.2.1.5.4	states that corrosion takes place at the anode while the cathode remains unaffected		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

1.2.1.5.5	describes the galvanic series of metals in seawater		
1.2.1.5.6	given the galvanic series, states which of two metals will form the anode in a corrosion cell		
1.2.1.5.7	explains the differences in surface condition or in stress concentration can give rise to corrosion cells between two areas of the same metal		
1.2.1.5.8	states that corrosion can be controlled by: <ul style="list-style-type: none">- applying a protective coating to isolate the steel from the air or from seawater electrolyte- using cathodic protection to prevent steel from forming the anode of a corrosion cell		
1.2.1.5.9	explains that cathodic protection can only be used to protect the underwater hull or ballasted tanks		
1.2.1.5.10	states that both of the methods mentioned above are normally used together		
1.2.1.5.11	explains what mill scale is and states that it is cathodic to mild steel		
1.2.1.5.12	describes the treatment of steel in a shipyard and the use of holding primers (shop primers)		
1.2.1.5.13	explains that the required preparation of steelwork depends upon the type of paint to be applied		
1.2.1.5.14	states that many modern paints, such as epoxy and polyurethane, need to be applied to a		
1.2.1.5.15	very clean shot-blasted surface		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

1.2.1.6	Surveys and dry-docking		
1.2.1.6.1	states the frequency of classification society surveys		
1.2.1.6.2	states that intervals between dry-dockings may be extended up to 2.5 years where a ship has high-resistance paint and an approved automatic impressed-current cathodic protection system		
1.2.1.6.3	states that continuous hull survey, in which all compartments are examined over a 5-year period, may replace the special surveys -		
1.2.1.6.4	explains all types of survey a ship is subjected to, including but limiting to: <ul style="list-style-type: none">- Initial Survey,- Renewal Survey,- Periodical Survey,- Intermediate Survey,- Annual Survey,- Inspection of the outside of the ships bottom,- Additional Survey		
1.2.1.6.5	explains the harmonized system of ship survey and certification		
1.2.1.6.6	explains Condition Assessment Scheme (CAS) for oil tankers and Condition Assessment Programme (CAP) -		
1.2.1.6.7	lists the items inspected at annual survey as: <ul style="list-style-type: none">- protection of openings: hatches, ventilators, cargo doors, side scuttles, overside discharges and any other openings through which water might enter- guardrails- water-clearing arrangements, freeing ports, scuppers- means of access to crews quarters and working areas		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

1.2.1.6.8	states that the inspections listed above are also required for the annual inspection under the International Convention on Load Lines		
1.2.1.6.9	lists the items to examine in dry-dock as: <ul style="list-style-type: none">- shell plating- cathodic protection fittings- rudder- stem frame- propeller- anchors and chain cable		
1.2.1.6.10	describes the examinations to be made of the items listed above		
1.2.1.6.11	describes the cleaning, preparation and painting of the hull in dry-dock		
1.2.1.6.12	calculates paint quantities, given the formula for wetted surface area as: $S = 2.58 \sqrt{\Delta L}$ where S = surface area in m ² A = displacement in tonnes L = length of ship in metres		

02. Engineering knowledge (Total number of hours - 42)



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

REF NO	KNOWLEDGE, UNDERSTANDING AND PROFICIENCY	DURATI ON	COURSE NOTE REF. NO
2.1	Operate remote controls of propulsion plant and engineering systems and services		
2.1.1	Operating principles of marine power plants		
2.1.1.1	Diesel engines		
2.1.1.1.1	uses generally accepted engineering terms		
2.1.1.1.2	describes the 2-stroke diesel cycle		
2.1.1.1.3	describes the 4-stroke diesel cycle		
2.1.1.1.4	describes the operating principles of marine diesel engine propulsion plant		
2.1.1.1.5	describes the advantages and disadvantages of a slow-speed diesel engine		
2.1.1.1.6	explains the cause of scavenge fires and how they are dealt with		
2.1.1.1.7	describes methods of supercharging		
2.1.1.1.8	describes the fuel oil system from bunker tank to injection		
2.1.1.1.9	describes the lubrication system		
2.1.1.1.10	describes engine cooling-water systems		
2.1.1.1.11	describes the advantages and disadvantages of a medium-speed diesel		
2.1.1.1.12	explains the need for gearing with medium-speed diesels		
2.1.1.1.13	describes the arrangement of clutch and turning gears		
2.1.1.1.14	describes how a diesel engine is prepared for stand-by		
2.1.1.1.15	describes the method of starting, stopping and reversing of a direct propulsion diesel engine		
2.1.1.1.16	states that the number of starts is limited by the capacity of the starting air reservoir		
2.1.1.1.17	describes the waste heat recovery system of the 2-stroke main propulsion engine		
2.1.1.2	Steam turbine systems		
2.1.1.2.1	between and describes open and closed feed systems		
2.1.1.2.2	states that a steam turbine needs a large water-tube boiler		
2.1.1.2.3	describes the turbine, the feed system and the boiler as a system		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation

No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

2.1.1.2.4	explains the working of an impulse turbine and a reaction turbine		
2.1.1.2.5	describes a steam turbine installation and its gearing		
2.1.1.2.6	distinguishes the main features of a water-tube boiler		
2.1.1.2.7	describes in outline the procedure for raising steam		
2.1.1.2.8	describes the procedure for warming through a steam turbine ready for manoeuvring		
2.1.1.2.9	describes the procedures for manoeuvring when using a steam turbine		
2.1.1.3	Gas turbine system		
2.1.1.3.1	describes the gas turbine system		
2.1.1.3.2	describes the compressor part of the gas turbine		
2.1.1.3.3	describes the combustion chamber or combustor part of the gas turbine		
2.1.1.3.4	describes the turbine part of the gas turbine		
2.1.1.3.5	describes the two main types of compressors		
2.1.1.4.	Propeller and propeller shaft		
2.1.1.4.1	describes the arrangement of thrust shaft, intermediate shafts and tailshaft		
2.1.1.4.2	explains how propeller thrust is transmitted to the hull		
2.1.1.4.3	describes how the propeller shaft is supported between the thrust block and the stern tube		
2.1.1.4.4	sketches and describes an oil-lubricated stern-tube bearing		
2.1.1.4.5	describes how the propeller is secured to the tailshaft		
2.1.1.4.6	defines pitch, slip and efficiency of a propeller		
2.1.1.4.7	calculates the percentage apparent slip from given data		
2.1.1.4.8	calculates the ship's speed, given the engine revolutions per minute, mean pitch and percentage slip		
2.1.1.4.9	describes the arrangement and operation of a controllable-pitch propeller (CPP)		
2.1.1.4.10	states the precautions to take with a CPP before: <ul style="list-style-type: none">- starting the main engines- going to sea- entering harbour or confined waters		
2.1.1.4.11	states that changing control positions and the use of emergency hand control pitch and engine revolutions		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

	should be exercised		
2.1.1.5	Bridge control		
2.1.1.5.1	describes a control system for the main engine, including control from bridge, machinery control room, engine control local and changeover controls		
2.1.1.5.2	describes bridge control of controllable-pitch propellers		
2.1.1.5.3	describes bridge control of slow speed diesel engines		
2.1.1.5.4	describes bridge control of steam turbines with associated boilers		
2.1.1.5.5	describes bridge control for gas turbines with associated gas generators		
2.1.1.5.6	lists the indicators and alarms provided with bridge control		
2.1.1.5.7	describes the arrangement and operations of lateral thrusters		
2.1.1.5.8	describes the bridge control and indicators for lateral thrusters		
2.1.1.5.9	describes the concept of control systems		
2.1.1.5.10	describes the terminology used in control systems		
2.1.1.5.11	explains when is the control system 'fail-safe'		
2.1.1.5.12	explains when is the control system 'fail-run'		
2.1.1.5.13	explains the meaning of safety interlocks in a control system		
2.1.1.5.14	describes the types of controls (open and closed loop)		
2.1.2	Ship's auxiliary machinery		
2.1.2.1	distinguishes between water-tube and fire-tube boilers		
2.1.2.2	describes auxiliary boilers		
2.1.2.3	describes a waste-heat boiler		
2.1.2.4	describes exhaust-gas heat exchangers		
2.1.2.5	describes steam-to-steam generators and explains where and why they used		
2.1.2.6	describes a boiler fuel oil supply system		
2.1.2.7	describes the effect of dissolved salts in the feed water and how it is treated		
2.1.2.8	explains what is meant by 'priming'		
2.1.2.9	states that carry-over of water may cause serious damage to turbine blading and to steam cylinders		
2.1.2.11	Distillation and fresh-water systems		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

2.1.2.11.1	describes a distillation system		
2.1.2.11.2	explains the operation of a flash evaporator		
2.1.2.11.3	describes the treatment of fresh water intended for drinking		
2.1.2.11.4	describes a domestic water system		
2.1.2.12	Pumps and pumping systems		
2.1.2.12.1	classifies pumps as displacement, axial-flow or centrifugal		
2.1.2.12.2	describes the operation of a reciprocating pump		
2.1.2.12.3	describes rotary displacement pumps and states typical applications		
2.1.2.12.4	describes a screw pump and states possible uses		
2.1.2.12.5	describes an axial-flow pump and states possible applications		
2.1.2.12.6	describes a centrifugal pump and states typical applications		
2.1.2.12.7	explains the need to prime a centrifugal pump		
2.1.2.12.8	describes the head losses in a pumping system and how they are expressed		
2.1.2.12.9	explains net positive suction head and its significance in pump operation		
2.1.2.12.10	describes a typical bilge system and ballast system for a dry cargo vessel		
2.1.2.12.11	states that the engine-room emergency bilge suction is connected to the main circulating pump in the engine-room		
2.1.2.13	Steering gear		
2.1.2.13.1	describes ram-type hydraulic steering gear		
2.1.2.13.2	describes rotary-vane steering gear		
2.1.2.13.3	explains how hydraulic power is provided by variable-delivery pumps		
2.1.2.13.4	describes the IMO requirements for auxiliary steering gear and how they are met by ram-type and rotary-vane steering gear		
2.1.2.13.5	describes a telemotor control system		
2.1.2.13.6	describes electric steering control		
2.1.2.13.7	explains how the change from remote to local control in the steering-gear compartment is made		
2.1.2.13.8	describes the requirement for power supplies to electric and electrohydraulic steering gear		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

2.1.2.13.9	describes the requirements for emergency control of the steering gear		
2.1.2.13.10	states the IMO requirements for testing steering gear and for drills		
2.1.2.14	Generators, alternators and electrical distribution		
2.1.2.14.1	describes the operation of a D.C. generator		
2.1.2.14.2	explains the functioning of shunt- and compound-wound D.C. motors		
2.1.2.14.3	describes the operation of an alternator		
2.1.2.14.4	explains the functioning of induction motors		
2.1.2.14.5	explains the relative advantages and disadvantages of generation and distribution of D.C. and A.C.		
2.1.2.14.6	describes D.C. and A.C. distribution systems		
2.1.2.14.7	describes the use of circuit-breakers and fuses		
2.1.2.14.8	describes and draws a navigation light circuit with indicators and alarm, showing an alternative power supply		
2.1.2.14.9	describes the use of rectifiers		
2.1.2.14.10	describes the characteristics of lead-acid batteries and of alkaline batteries		
2.1.2.14.11	describes the maintenance of batteries		
2.1.2.14.12	describes the safety precautions to be observed for battery compartments - outlines the starting requirements for emergency generating sets		
2.1.2.14.13	lists the services to be supplied from the emergency generator		
2.1.2.14.14	describes the supplementary emergency lighting for ro-ro passenger ships		
2.1.2.15	Refrigeration, air-conditioning and ventilation		
2.1.2.15.1	describes a vapour-compression-cycle refrigeration plant		
2.1.2.15.2	states desirable properties of a refrigerant		
2.1.2.15.3	states the properties of commonly used refrigerants		
2.1.2.15.4	describes the use of secondary refrigerants for cooling compartments		
2.1.2.15.5	explains the co-efficient of performance of a refrigeration plant		
2.1.2.15.6	describes an air-conditioning plant		
2.1.2.15.7	describes a ventilation system for accommodation		
2.1.2.15.8	describes a mechanical ventilation system for ships' holds		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

2.1.2.16	Stabilizers		
2.1.2.16.1	describes the construction and operation of fin stabilizers		
2.1.2.16.2	describes the arrangement and operation of a flume stabilizer		
2.1.2.17	Sewage treatment plants		
2.1.2.17.1	describes the operation of a chemical sewage treatment plant		
2.1.2.17.2	describes the operation of a biological sewage treatment plant		
2.1.2.18	Oily water separators and oil filtering equipment		
2.1.2.18.1	describes the operation of an oily water separator (producing effluent that contains less than 100 ppm of oil)		
2.1.2.18.2	describes the operation of oil filtering equipment (producing effluent that contains not more than 15 ppm of oil)		
2.1.2.18.3	explains why oily water separators, even if well maintained and correctly operated, may not function properly		
2.1.2.18.4	describes how an oil-content meter functions		
2.1.2.18.5	describes an oil discharge monitoring and control system		
2.1.2.19	Incinerators		
2.1.2.19.1	describes the functioning of a waste incinerator		
2.1.2.20	Deck machinery		
2.1.2.20.1	states that the design and performance of anchor windlasses is subject to approval by a classification society		
2.1.2.20.2	sketches and describes a windlass driving two de-clutchable cable lifters and warping drums		
2.1.2.20.3	explains the gearing necessary between the prime mover and cable lifters		
2.1.2.20.4	states that both winches may be coupled mechanically to provide either a stand-by drive, in case one prime mover should fail, or the power of both prime movers on one windlass, if required		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

<p>2.1.2.20.5 2.1.2.20.6 2.1.2.20.7 2.1.2.20.8 2.1.2.20.9 2.1.2.20.10 2.1.2.20.11</p> <p>2.1.2.21</p> <p>2.1.2.21.1 2.1.2.21.2 2.1.2.21.3 2.1.2.21.4 2.1.2.21.5 2.1.2.21.6 2.1.2.21.7 2.1.2.21.8 2.1.2.21.9 2.1.2.21.10 2.1.2.21.11 2.1.2.21.12 2.1.2.21.13</p>	<p>describes the arrangement of vertical anchor capstans with driving machinery below deck</p> <p>describes a spooling device to distribute the wire evenly on the drum of a mooring winch</p> <p>explains the working of self-tensioning winches</p> <p>briefly explains the advantages and disadvantages of steam, electric and hydraulic drive for mooring winches and capstans describes a cargo winch sketches and describes a slewing deck crane, its motors and its controls</p> <p>describes the lubrication of deck machinery</p> <p>Hydraulic systems</p> <p>states that a hydraulic system consists of an oil tank, pumps, control valves, hydraulic motors and pipe work</p> <p>distinguishes between open- and closed-loop systems</p> <p>describes a live-line circuit supplied by a centralized hydraulic power system</p> <p>describes radial-piston and axial-piston variable-stroke pumps</p> <p>explains how the variable-stroke pump can act as controller and power supply</p> <p>sketches and describes a simple spool valve with shutoff and control of flow direction</p> <p>describes ram and rotary-vane actuators</p> <p>states that hydraulic systems can provide stepless control of speed for winches, cranes and other lifting devices</p> <p>describes a hydraulic accumulator and explains its purpose</p> <p>states that cooling of the hydraulic oil is necessary during operation to maintain the correct viscosity of the oil</p> <p>states that the oil may need to be heated before starting from cold</p> <p>states that cleanliness of the oil is essential for satisfactory operation and that all systems contain filters</p> <p>states that air in a system leads to erratic functioning</p>		
<p>2.1.3</p> <p>2.1.3.1</p> <p>2.1.3.1.1 2.1.3.1.2</p>	<p>General knowledge of marine engineering systems</p> <p>Marine engineering terms and fuel consumption</p> <p>uses the correct engineering terms when describing and explaining the operation of the machinery and equipment mentioned above</p> <p>defines mass, force, work, power, energy, pressure, stress, strain and heat and states the units in which each</p>		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

	is measured		
2.1.3.1.3	explains what is meant by the efficiency of machine		
2.1.3.1.4	describes an indicator diagram and the information obtainable from it		
2.1.3.1.5	defines indicated power, shaft power, propeller power and thrust		
2.1.3.1.6	defines the Admiralty coefficient (AC) as:		
	$AC = \frac{(\text{displacement})^{2/3} \times (\text{speed})^3}{\text{engine power}}$		
2.1.3.1.7	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - defines the fuel coefficient (FC) as: 		
	$FC = \frac{(\text{displacement})^{2/3} \times (\text{speed})^3}{\text{daily fuel consumption}}$		
2.1.3.1.8	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - explains that for a given period of time: 		
	$\frac{\text{fuel consumption}^1}{\text{fuel consumption}^2} = \left(\frac{\text{displacement}^1}{\text{displacement}^2} \right)^{2/3} \times \left(\frac{\text{speed}^1}{\text{speed}^2} \right)^3$		
2.1.3.1.9	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - explains that for a given distance: 		
	$\frac{\text{fuel consumption}^1}{\text{fuel consumption}^2} = \left(\frac{\text{displacement}^1}{\text{displacement}^2} \right)^{2/3} \times \left(\frac{\text{speed}^1}{\text{speed}^2} \right)^2$		
2.1.3.1.10	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - explains that: 		
	$\frac{\text{Voyage consumption}^1}{\text{Voyage consumption}^2} = \left(\frac{\text{displacement}^1}{\text{displacement}^2} \right)^{2/3} \times \left(\frac{\text{speed}^1}{\text{speed}^2} \right)^2 \times \frac{\text{Voyage distance}^1}{\text{Voyage distance}^2}$		
2.1.3.1.11	given data from the previous performance, calculates:		
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - the daily consumption at service speed - the bunker fuel required for a voyage - the speed for a given daily consumption - the reduced speed required to complete a voyage with a given consumption 		
2.1.3.1.12	explains that, for fuel economy, the actual speed at any stage of a voyage should be as near as practicable to the required average speed		
2.1.3.1.13	explains how the condition of the hull affects the fuel coefficient and the fuel consumption		
2.1.3.1.14	explains that keeping the leading edges and tips of propeller blades dressed and polished improves propeller		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

	efficiency and reduces fuel consumption		
2.1.4	Arrangements necessary for appropriate and effective engineering watches to be maintained for the purpose of safety under normal circumstances and UMS operations		
2.1.4.1	explains briefly the general engine room safety that should be observed at all given times		
2.1.4.2	describes the main dangers and sources of risk in an engine room		
2.1.4.3	explains the importance and implementation of risk assessment and risk management in an engine room		
2.1.4.4	describes the safe systems of work and permits to work that should be observed in an engine room		
2.1.4.5	explains the types and importance of wearing personal protective equipment (PPE) while working in an engine room		
2.1.4.6	describes the arrangements necessary for appropriate and effective engineering watches to be maintained for the purpose of safety under normal circumstances and UMS operations		
2.1.5	Arrangements necessary to ensure a safe engineering watch is maintained when carrying dangerous cargo		
2.1.5.1	describes the arrangements necessary to ensure a safe engineering watch is maintained when carrying dangerous cargo		

3.0 Meteorology (Total number of hours - 42)



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

REF NO	KNOWLEDGE, UNDERSTANDING AND PROFICIENCY	DURATION	COURSE NOTE REF. NO
3.1	Forecast weather and oceanographic conditions		
3.1.1	Ability to understand and interpret a synoptic chart and to forecast area weather, taking into account local weather conditions and information received by weather fax		
3.1.1.1	Synoptic and prognostic charts and forecasts from any source		
3.1.1.1.1	interprets the isobaric patterns of a synoptic weather chart with interpolation and extrapolation as necessary		
3.1.1.1.2	determines the geostrophic and approximate surface wind speeds from the chart by use of the geostrophic wind scale		
3.1.1.1.3	determines the weather associated with specific places within the plots		
3.1.1.1.4	determines the likely movement of pressure systems,		
3.1.1.1.5	evaluates the use of prognostic charts		
3.1.1.1.6	evaluates the information given in shipping forecasts		
3.1.1.1.7	evaluates the information received from internet and email		
3.1.1.2	Range of information available		
3.1.1.2.1	lists the information available to the mariner in fax transmissions		
3.1.1.2.2	discusses the source of information relating to radio stations, and their transmissions		
3.1.1.2.3	evaluates the information given in surface synoptic and prognostic fax charts		
3.1.1.2.4	interprets the information given in wave charts		
3.1.1.2.5	evaluates the information given in ice charts		
3.1.1.2.6	evaluates the use of 500 hPa charts in forecasting the progress of depressions		
3.1.1.2.7	evaluates the value of personal observations of weather signs, in evaluating weather trends		
3.1.1.2.8	lists the information available to the mariner via internet and email		
3.1.1.2.9	evaluates the information received from internet and email		
3.1.1.3	Weather Forecasting		
3.1.1.3.1	forecasts anticipated local weather from synopsis and prognosis information received, the movement of		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

	meteorological systems, knowledge of local influences, observation of local conditions and movement of own ship		
3.1.2	Knowledge of the characteristics of various weather systems, including tropical revolving storms and avoidance of storm centres and the dangerous quadrants		
3.1.2.1	Tropical revolving storms (TRS)		
3.1.2.1.1	states the definitions adopted by the WMO with respect to tropical storms		
3.1.2.1.2	states local nomenclature of TRS		
3.1.2.1.3	states regions and seasons of greatest frequency of TRS		
3.1.2.1.4	states the conditions associated with the formation of tropical revolving storms		
3.1.2.1.5	states the factors that affect the future movement of a TRS		
3.1.2.1.6	describes with the aid of diagrams typical and possible tracks of TRS		
3.1.2.1.7	explains the factors associated with the decay of TRS		
3.1.2.1.8	draws a plan of a TRS showing isobars, wind circulation, path, track, vortex or eye, trough line, dangerous semicircle, dangerous quadrant and navigable semicircle (for north and south hemispheres)		
3.1.2.1.9	explains the reasons for the naming of the dangerous semicircle		
3.1.2.1.10	draws a cross-section through a TRS showing areas of cloud and precipitation		
3.1.2.1.11	describes the characteristics of a TRS, i.e. size, wind, pressure, eye, cloud and precipitation sequence		
3.1.2.1.12	describes the signs which give warning of the approach for the TRS		
3.1.2.1.13	explains the methods of determining the approximate bearing of an approaching TRS		
3.1.2.1.14	explains the method of determining in which sector of a TRS the ship is situated		
3.1.2.1.15	states the correct avoidance procedure when in the vicinity of a TRS		
3.1.2.1.16	given the position and direction of travel of a TRS and ship's voyage information, describes appropriate measures to avoid the danger sector of a TRS		
3.1.2.1.17	describes the messages required to be sent in accordance with the requirements of SOLAS, when a TRS is encountered, or suspected to be in the vicinity		
3.1.2.1.18	describes the message required to be sent in accordance with the requirement of SOLAS when a wind of or above storm force 10 is encountered which has not previously been reported		
3.1.2.1.19			
3.1.2.2	Main types of floating ice, their origins and movements		
3.1.2.2.1	explains the formation of icebergs from floating glacier tongues and from ice shelves, and the characteristics		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

<p>3.1.2.2.2 3.1.2.2.3 3.1.2.2.4 3.1.2.2.5 3.1.2.2.6 3.1.2.2.7 3.1.2.2.8 3.1.2.2.9 3.1.2.2.10</p>	<p>of each discusses the formation of sea ice defines ice tongue, ice shelf defines pack ice and fast ice discusses the normal seasons and probable tracks of North Atlantic bergs from origin to decay defines the outer limits of the area in which icebergs may be encountered in the North Atlantic discusses the normal and extreme limits of iceberg travel in the southern oceans during summer and winter explains the reasons for the decay of icebergs describes the areas affected by sea ice in regions frequented by shipping discusses the seasonal development and recession of sea ice on the coastlines of the northern oceans, and in the latitude of the normal trade routes</p>		
<p>3.1.2.3 3.1.2.3.1 3.1.2.3.2 3.1.2.3.3 3.1.2.3.4 3.1.2.3.5 3.1.2.3.6 3.1.2.3.7</p>	<p>Conditions leading to ice accretion on ship's superstructures, dangers and the remedies available describes the factors which may give rise to ice accretion describes the use of data in the Mariner's Handbook, for estimating the rate of ice accretion evaluates the methods of avoiding or reducing ice accretion explains the reports to be made under international conventions when ice is encountered lists the information to be given in radio messages reporting dangerous ice states the iceberg nomenclature in use by the International Ice Patrol lists the information to be given in radio messages reporting conditions leading to severe ice accretion on ship's superstructures</p>		
<p>3.1.3 3.1.3.1 3.1.3.1.1 3.1.3.1.2 3.1.3.1.3 3.1.3.1.4 3.1.3.1.5</p>	<p>Knowledge of ocean current systems Surface water circulation of the ocean and principal adjoining seas defines qualitatively the effect of geostrophic force on surface currents discusses the generation of drift currents by prevailing winds discusses the generation of gradient currents from differences in water temperature and salinity discusses the generation of gradient currents resulting from the indirect of wind causing a piling up of water on windward coasts, as in the case of the Equatorial Counter Currents analyses the nature of currents formed by a combination of the above as experienced by western shores of large land masses</p>		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

<p>3.1.3.1.6 3.1.3.1.7 3.1.3.1.8 3.1.3.1.9 3.1.3.1.10 3.1.3.1.11 3.1.3.1.12 3.1.3.1.13 3.1.3.1.14 3.1.3.1.15 3.1.3.1.16 3.1.3.1.17 3.1.3.1.18</p>	<p>relates the general pattern of surface water circulation to the atmospheric pressure distribution constructs a chart showing global surface water circulation applicable to the above describes the seasonal changes in the above in areas under the influence of the Asian monsoons identifies the principal individual currents by name analyses the causes of individual currents where explicitly stated in Meteorology for Mariners explains the classification of individual currents as warm or cold where appropriate describes the form in which surface current data is presented in current atlases and on routeing charts evaluates qualitatively the use of this data in passage planning explains the derivation of the current rose explains the derivation of the predominant current shows the meaning of the term constancy when applied to predominant currents explains the derivation of the vector mean current compares qualitatively the values of the information given by the current rose, the predominant current and the vector mean current as aids to passage planning</p>		
<p>3.1.3.2 3.1.3.2.1 3.1.3.2.2 3.1.3.2.3 3.1.3.2.4 3.1.3.2.5 3.1.3.2.6 3.1.3.2.7 3.1.3.2.8 3.1.3.2.9 3.1.3.2.10 3.1.3.2.11 3.1.3.2.12 3.1.3.2.13</p>	<p>Voyage planning principles with respect to weather conditions and wave height selects and uses data from Ocean Passages for the World describes climatological routeing defines significant wave height discusses the factors affecting wave height and direction describes the methods employed in forecasting wave heights describes optimum (least time) routeing evaluates the forms of routeing in the above objectives describes the methods of constructing a least time track appraises the relative merits of ship and shore-based routeing, and their limitations describes the construction of ships' performance curves demonstrates the use of monthly Routeing Charts explains the construction and use of a Baillie wind rose demonstrates familiarity with the forms of climatological, meteorological and current data presented in the Sailing Directions (Pilot Books) and in the Mariner's Handbook</p>		
<p>3.1.3.3</p>	<p>Formation of sea waves and swell waves</p>		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation

No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka

Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

3.1.3.3.1	selects and uses data from Ocean Passages for the World		
3.1.3.3.2	explains the role of wind in wave formation		
3.1.3.3.3	explains the importance of wind force in wave formation		
3.1.3.3.4	explains the importance of duration of wind causing waves		
3.1.3.3.5	explains the importance of fetch in the growth of waves		
3.1.3.3.6	uses Dorrenstein's nomogram for forecasting significant wave heights		
3.1.3.3.7	states the relationship between sea waves and swell waves		
3.1.3.3.8	explains the decay of swell waves as they travel from the area of origin		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

04. Business and law (Total number of hours - 84)

Ref. No	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Duration	Course Note Ref.
4.1	Plan & ensure safe loading, stowage, securing, care during the voyage & unloading of cargoes		
4.1.1	Knowledge of & ability to apply relevant international regulations, codes & standards concerning the safe handling, stowage, securing & transport of cargoes		
4.1.1.1	Compliance with the minimum freeboard requirements of the Load Line Regulations		
4.1.1.1.1	uses the chart of zones and seasonal areas to determine the load lines which apply for all stages of a particular passage		
4.1.1.1.2	plans the loading, discharge and consumption of deadweight items to determine the minimum departure freeboards and maximum quantities to load in one or more loading ports to ensure that the vessel is not overloaded at any stage of a voyage through multiple load line zones and seasonal zones		
4.1.2	Stowage and securing of cargoes on board ship's, including cargo-handling gear and securing and lashing equipment	6.0	
4.1.2.1	Procedures for receiving, and delivering cargo		
4.1.2.1.1	states the period for which the ship is deemed responsible for the cargo under conventions for the carriage of goods and under typical carriage contracts evidenced by bills of lading or charter parties		
4.1.2.1.2	states that damaged cargo should be rejected or steps taken to ensure that the damage is recorded and endorsed where appropriate on the bill of lading		
4.1.2.1.3	explains that bills of lading may sometimes still be drawn up from mate's receipts and the importance of endorsing mate's receipts for the condition of goods and packages		
4.1.2.1.4	describes the endorsement of mate's receipts and/or bills of lading for goods in dispute		
4.1.2.1.5	describes the endorsement of mate's receipts and/or bills of lading for cargoes where the weight and quality are not known to the ship		
4.1.2.1.6	explains the actions to take when a clean mate's receipt or bill of lading is demanded for cargo which is not in		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

4.1.2.1.7	apparent good condition explains why letters of indemnity offered in return for clean bills of lading should be refused		
4.1.2.1.8	describes the documentation which should accompany dangerous goods and is required before loading		
4.1.2.1.9	states that containers should have their seals and locks in place when loaded		
4.1.2.1.10	states that, if damage to cargo is suspected, protest should be noted before commencing discharging		
4.1.2.1.11	explains the procedure for noting protest and extending protest states that an independent cargo survey should be arranged when cargo damage is suspected or found on opening hatches		
4.1.2.1.12	states that broken or broached packages should be placed in a locker until the contents can be checked and agreed with a representative of the receiver and a receipt obtained for them		
4.1.2.1.13	explains how to deal with empty bags or packages, sweepings and other loose goods		
4.1.2.1.14	states that cargo spaces should be searched at the completion of discharging to prevent the over carriage of cargo		
4.1.2.1.15	describes the procedure for claiming for damage done to the ship during loading or discharging		
4.1.2.1.16	explains to whom cargo should be delivered		
4.1.2.1.17	explains the potential consequences of delivering cargo to the incorrect party or under a letter of indemnity		
4.1.2.1.18	explains the procedure that should be adopted when requested to deliver cargo against a letter of indemnity		
4.1.2.1.19			
4.2	Monitor & control compliance with legislative requirements and measures to ensure safety of life at sea, security and the protection of the marine environment		
4.2.1	International maritime law embodied in international agreements and conventions		
4.2.1.1	Certificates and other documents required to be carried on board ships by international conventions		
4.2.1.1.1	states that I MO publishes a list of certificates and documents required to be carried on board ship		
4.2.1.1.2	states how a current version of the IMO list of certificates and documents required to be carried on board ship may be obtained		
4.2.1.1.3	identifies the certificates required by MLC (2006) to be carried on board ship		
4.2.1.1.4	identifies the certificates and documents that are required to be carried on board a ship of any type using the IMO information		
4.2.1.1.5	states the period of validity for each of the above certificates and explains the requirements for renewing or maintaining the validity of each		
4.2.1.1.6	explains how each of the certificates and documents required to be carried on board ships are obtained		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

4.2.1.1.7	explains the proof of validity that may be required by authorities for the certificates and documents above		
4.2.1.2	Responsibilities under the relevant requirements of the International Convention on Load Lines		
4.2.1.2.1	states that a ship to which the Convention applies must comply with the requirements for that ship		
4.2.1.2.2	explains the general requirements of the Conditions of Assignment to be met before any vessel can be assigned a load line		
4.2.1.2.3	describes the factors that determine the freeboards assigned to a vessel		
4.2.1.2.4	describes the requirements and coverage of initial, renewal and annual surveys		
4.2.1.2.5	describes the contents of the record of particulars which should be supplied to the ship		
4.2.1.2.6	explains the documentation and records that must be maintained on the ship in terms of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - certificates - record of particulars - record of freeboards - information relating to the stability and loading of the ship 		
4.2.1.2.7	states that after any survey has been completed no change should be made in the structure, equipment or other matters covered by the survey without the sanction of the Administration		
4.2.1.2.8	states that, after repairs or alterations, a ship should comply with at least the requirements previously applicable and that, after major repairs or alterations, ships should comply with the requirements for a new ship in so far as the Administration deems reasonable and practicable		
4.2.1.2.9	describes the preparation required for renewal and annual load line surveys		
4.2.1.2.10	states that the appropriate load lines on the sides of the ship corresponding to the season and to the zone or area in		
4.2.1.2.11	which the ship may be must not be submerged at any time when the ship puts to sea, during the voyage or on arrival		
4.2.1.2.12	states that when a ship is in fresh water of unit density the appropriate load line may be submerged by the amount of the fresh water allowance shown on the International Load Line Certificate (1966)		
4.2.1.2.13	states that when a ship departs from port situated on a river or inland waters, deeper loading is permitted corresponding to the weight of fuel and all other materials required for consumption between the point of departure and the sea		
4.2.1.2.14	explains the treatment of a port lying on the boundary between two zones or areas explains the circumstances in which an International Load Line Certificate (1966) would be cancelled by the Administration		
4.2.1.3	Responsibilities under the relevant requirements of the International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea		3.2.1.3



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation

No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka

Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

4.2.1.3.1	states the obligations of the Master concerning the sending of danger messages relating to dangerous ice, a dangerous derelict, other dangers to navigation, tropical storms, sub-freezing air temperature with gale force winds causing severe ice accretion or winds of force 10 or above for which no storm warning has been received		
4.2.1.3.2	lists the information required in danger messages		
4.2.1.3.3	states that when ice is reported near his course, the Master of every ship at night is bound to proceed at a moderate speed or to alter his course so as to go well clear of the danger zone		
4.2.1.3.4	states that the use of an international distress signal, except for the purpose of indicating that a ship or aircraft is in distress, and the use of any signal which may be confused with an international distress signal are prohibited		
4.2.1.3.5	states the obligations of the Master of a ship at sea on receiving a signal from any source that a ship or aircraft or a survival craft thereof is in distress		
4.2.1.3.6	explains the rights of the Master of a ship in distress to requisition one or more ships which have answered his call for assistance		
4.2.1.3.7	explains when the Master of a ship is released from the obligation to render assistance		
4.2.1.3.8	describes the requirements for the carriage of navigational equipment		
4.2.1.3.9	states that all equipment fitted in compliance with reg. V/12 must be of a type approved by the Administration		
4.2.1.3.10	states that all ships should be sufficiently and efficiently manned		
4.2.1.3.11	states that manning is subject to Port State Control inspection		
4.2.1.3.12	lists the contents of the minimum safe manning document referred to in Assembly resolution A481 (XII), Principles of safe manning		
4.2.1.3.13	states that in areas where navigation demands special caution, ships should have more than one steering gear power unit in operation when such units are capable of simultaneous operation		
4.2.1.3.14	describes the procedure for the testing of the ship's steering gear before departure		
4.2.1.3.15	describes the requirements for the display of operating instructions and change-over procedures for remote steering gear control and steering gear power units		
4.2.1.3.16	describes the requirements for emergency steering drills		
4.2.1.3.17	lists the entries which should be made in the logbook regarding the checks and tests of the steering gear and the holding of emergency drills		
4.2.1.3.18	states that all ships should carry adequate and up-to-date charts, sailing directions, lists of lights, notices to mariners, tide tables and other nautical publications necessary for the voyage		
4.2.1.3.19	states which ships should carry the International Code of Signals		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

4.2.1.4	Maritime declarations of health and the requirements of the International Health Regulations		
4.2.1.4.1	Arrival documents and procedures [International Health Regulations (1969) as amended (IHR)]		
4.2.1.4.2	defines for the purposes of these regulations: <ul style="list-style-type: none">- arrival of a ship- baggage- container or freight container- crew- diseases subject to the regulations- disinsecting- epidemic- free pratique- health administration- health authority- infected person- in quarantine- international voyage- isolation- medical examination- ship- suspect- valid certificate		
4.2.1.4.3	states that a health authority should, if requested, issue, free of charge to the carrier, a certificate specifying the measures applied to a ship or container, the parts treated, methods used and the reasons why they have been applied states that, except in an emergency constituting a grave danger to public health, a ship which is not infected or suspected of being infected with a disease subject to the regulations should not be refused free pratique on account of any other epidemic disease and should not be prevented from discharging or loading cargo or stores, or taking on fuel or water		
4.2.1.4.4	states that a health authority may take all practicable measures to control the discharge from any ship of sewage and		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

4.2.1.4.5	refuse which might contaminate the waters of a port, river or canal describes the measures which the health authority of a port may take with respect to departing travellers states that no health measures should be applied by a State to any ship which passes through waters within its jurisdiction without calling at a port or on the coast describes the measures which may be applied to a ship which passes through a canal or waterway in a territory of a State on its way to a port in the territory of another State		
4.2.1.4.6	states that, whenever possible, States should authorize granting of free pratique by radio		
4.2.1.4.7	explains that the Master should make known to port authorities, as long as possible before arrival, any case of illness on board, in the interests of the patient and the health authorities and to facilitate clearance of the ship		
4.2.1.4.8	states that, on arrival of a ship, an infected person may be removed and isolated and that such removal should be compulsory if required by the Master		
4.2.1.4.9	states that a ship should not be prevented for health reasons from calling at any port, but if the port is not equipped for applying the health measures which in the opinion of the health authority of the port are required, the ship may be ordered to proceed at its own risk to the nearest suitable port convenient to it		
4.2.1.4.10	explains the actions open to a ship which is unwilling to submit to the measures required by the health authority of a port		
4.2.1.4.11	describes the measures concerning cargo and goods		
4.2.1.4.12	describes the measures concerning baggage		
4.2.1.4.13	Plague		
4.2.1.4.14	states that, for the purposes of the regulations, the incubation period of plague is six days		
4.2.1.4.15	states that vaccination against plague should not be required as a condition of admission of any person to a territory		
4.2.1.4.16	states that during the stay of a ship in a port infected by plague, special care should be taken to prevent the introduction of rodents on board		
4.2.1.4.17	states that ships should be permanently kept free of rodents and the plague vector or be periodically derailed		
4.2.1.4.18	describes the requirements for the issue of a Ship Sanitation Control Certificate or a Ship Sanitation Control Exemption Certificate and states their periods of validity		
4.2.1.4.19	states the conditions in which a ship on arrival is to be regarded as infected, suspected or healthy		
4.2.1.4.20	describes the measures which may be applied by a health authority on the arrival of an infected or suspected ship		
4.2.1.4.21	Cholera		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

4.2.1.4.22	describes the measures which may be applied by a health authority on the arrival of a healthy ship from an infected area		
4.2.1.4.23	states that, for the purposes of the regulations, the incubation period of cholera is five days		
4.2.1.4.24	describes the measures to be taken by the health authority if a case of cholera is discovered upon arrival or a case has occurred on board		
4.2.1.4.25	Yellow fever		
4.2.1.4.26	states that, for the purposes of the regulations, the incubation period of yellow fever is six days		
4.2.1.4.27	states that vaccination against yellow fever may be required of any person leaving an infected area on an international voyage		
4.2.1.4.28	states that every member of the crew of a ship using a port in an infected area must be in possession of a valid certificate of vaccination against yellow fever		
4.2.1.4.29	states the conditions in which a ship on arrival is to be regarded as infected, suspected or healthy		
4.2.1.4.30	describes the measures which may be applied by a health authority on the arrival of an infected or suspected ship		
	Documents		
4.2.1.4.31	states that bills of health or any other certificates concerning health conditions of a port are not required from any ship		
4.2.1.4.32	describes the Master's obligations concerning a Maritime Declaration of Health		
4.2.1.4.33	states that the Master and the ship's surgeon, if one is carried, must supply any information required by the health authority as to health conditions on board during the voyage		
	states that no health document, other than those provided for in the regulations, should be required in international traffic		
4.2.1.5	Responsibilities under other international maritime law embodied in international agreements and conventions that impact on the role of management level deck officers		3.2.1.6
4.2.1.5.1	Convention on Facilitation of International Maritime Traffic, 1965, as amended		3.2.1.6.1
4.2.1.5.1.1	states that the purpose of the Convention is to facilitate maritime transport by simplifying and reducing to a		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation

No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka

Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

4.2.1.5.1.2	minimum the formalities, documentary requirements and procedures on the arrival, stay and departure of ships engaged in international voyages explains that the Convention lays down 'standards' and 'recommended practices' regarding documentation and procedures for facilitating international maritime traffic		
4.2.1.5.1.3	lists the documents which should be the only ones required by public authorities for their retention on arrival, or departure of ships to which the Convention applies		
4.2.1.5.1.4	explains that the provisions do not preclude the requirement for the presentation for inspection by the appropriate authorities of certificates and other papers concerned with registry, measurement, safety, manning and other related matters		
4.2.1.5.1.5	explains that the Convention lays down 'standards' and 'recommended practices' regarding documentation and procedures for facilitating international maritime traffic		
4.2.1.5.1.6	lists the documents which should be the only ones required by public authorities for their retention on arrival, or departure of ships to which the Convention applies		
4.2.1.5.1.7	explains that the provisions do not preclude the requirement for the presentation for inspection by the appropriate authorities of certificates and other papers concerned with registry, measurement, safety, manning and other related matters		
4.2.1.5.1.8	states that I M O has produced standard forms for: <ul style="list-style-type: none">- general declaration- cargo declaration- ship's effects declaration- crew's effects declaration- crew list- passenger list- dangerous goods manifest		
4.2.1.5.1.9	explains that arrival procedures may be expedited by: <ul style="list-style-type: none">- providing the public authorities concerned with an advance message giving the best ETA, followed by any information as to change of time, and stating the itinerary of the voyage- having ship's documents ready for prompt review- rigging a means of boarding while the ship is en route to the berth or anchorage- providing for prompt, orderly assembling and presentation of persons on board, with necessary documents for inspection, including arrangements for relieving crew members from essential duties		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation

No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka

Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

4.2.1.5.2	United Nations Convention on the Law of the Sea (UNCLOS)		
4.2.1.5.2.1	explains that the outcome of UNCLOS III conference convened at Geneva in 1974 was the United Nations Convention on the Law of the Sea commonly known as “UNCLOS”		
4.2.1.5.2.2	explains that UNCLOS attempts to codify the international law of the sea		
4.2.1.5.2.3	states that UNCLOS defines the legal status of the high seas and establishes regulations for the control of marine pollution		
4.2.1.5.2.4	states that UNCLOS is a treaty document of 320 articles and 9 annexes, governing all aspects of ocean space, such as delimitation, environmental control, marine scientific research, economic and commercial activities, transfer of technology and the settlement of disputes relating to ocean matters		
4.2.1.5.2.5	states that UNCLOS came into force internationally on 16 November 1994		
4.2.1.5.2.6	states that UNCLOS sets the width of the territorial sea at 12 nautical miles, with a contiguous zone at 24 nautical miles from the baseline		
4.2.1.5.2.7	states that UNCLOS defines innocent passage through the territorial sea and defines transit passage through international straits		
4.2.1.5.2.8	states that UNCLOS defines archipelagic States and allows for passage through archipelagic waters		
4.2.1.5.2.9	states that UNCLOS establishes exclusive economic zones (EEZs) extending to 200 nautical miles from baselines		
4.2.1.5.2.10	explains that it defines the continental shelf and extends jurisdiction over the resources of the shelf beyond 200 miles where appropriate		
4.2.1.5.2.11	explains that states in dispute about their interpretation of UNCLOS may submit their disagreements to competent courts such as the International Court of Justice (in The Hague), or the Law of the Sea Tribunal (in Hamburg)		
4.2.1.5.2.12	states that the responsibility for enforcement of regulations rests mainly with flag States, but as vessels enter zones closer to the coast the influence of coastal State jurisdiction and, ultimately, port State jurisdiction, gradually increases		
4.2.1.5.2.13	states that Article 94 of the UNCLOS deals with duties of the flag State, while Article 217 deals with enforcement by flag States		
4.2.1.5.2.14	states that Article 218 of the UNCLOS deals with port State jurisdiction		
4.2.1.5.2.15	explains when a vessel is voluntarily within a port or at an offshore terminal, the port State may, where the evidence warrants, begin proceedings in respect of discharges in violation of international rules (i.e. regulations in MARPOL 73/78)		
4.2.1.5.2.16	states that another State in which a discharge violation has occurred, or the flag State, may request the port State to investigate the violation		
4.2.1.5.2.17	states that Article 200 of the UNCLOS deals with coastal State jurisdiction as applied in relation to pollution		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation

No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka

Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

<p>4.2.1.5.2.18</p> <p>4.2.1.5.2.19</p> <p>4.2.1.5.2.20</p> <p>4.2.1.5.2.21</p> <p>4.2.1.5.2.22</p> <p>4.2.1.5.2.23</p>	<p>provisions</p> <p>states that where there are clear grounds for believing that a vessel navigating in the territorial sea of a State has violated laws and regulations of the coastal State adopted in accordance with UNCLOS or applicable international pollution regulations, the coastal State may inspect the vessel and, where evidence warrants, institute proceedings including detention of the vessel</p> <p>states that vessels believed to have violated pollution laws in an EEZ may be required to give identification and voyage information to the coastal State</p> <p>explains that as per UNCLOS, States must agree international rules and standards to prevent pollution from vessels (Article 211). (This obligation is currently met by MARPOL 73/78)</p> <p>explains that coastal States may also promulgate and enforce pollution regulations in their own EEZs which may, in some circumstances, include imposition of routing restrictions</p> <p>states that in the territorial sea additional navigational restraints (e.g. traffic separation schemes and sea lanes) may be imposed on vessels with dangerous and hazardous cargoes</p> <p>explains that coastal States and ports may make entry to internal waters and harbours conditional on meeting additional pollution regulations</p>		
<p>4.2.1.5.3</p> <p>4.2.1.5.3.1</p> <p>4.2.1.5.3.2</p> <p>4.2.1.5.3.3</p> <p>4.2.1.5.3.4</p> <p>4.2.1.5.3.5</p> <p>4.2.1.5.3.6</p>	<p>Maritime Labour Convention (MLC 2006)</p> <p>explains that the Maritime Labour Convention, 2006, is an important new international labour Convention that was adopted by the International Labour Conference of the International Labour Organization (ILO), under article 19 of its Constitution at a maritime session in February 2006 in Geneva, Switzerland</p> <p>explains that it sets out seafarers' rights to decent conditions of work and helps to create conditions of fair competition for shipowners</p> <p>explains that it is intended to be globally applicable, easily understandable, readily updatable and uniformly enforced</p> <p>explains that the MLC 2006, complementing other major international conventions, reflects international agreement on the minimum requirements for working and living conditions for seafarers'</p> <p>explains that the Maritime Labour Convention, 2006, has two primary purposes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - to bring the system of protection contained in existing labour standards closer to the workers concerned, in a form consistent with the rapidly developing, globalized sector (ensuring "decent work"); - to improve the applicability of the system so that shipowners and governments interested in providing decent conditions of work do not have to bear an unequal burden in ensuring protection ("level playing field" fair competition) <p>explains that the Maritime Labour Convention, 2006, has been designed to become a global legal instrument that,</p>		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation

No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

<p>4.2.1.5.3.7</p> <p>4.2.1.5.3.8</p> <p>4.2.1.5.3.9</p> <p>4.2.1.5.3.10</p> <p>4.2.1.5.3.11</p> <p>4.2.1.5.3.12</p> <p>4.2.1.5.3.13</p> <p>4.2.1.5.3.14</p> <p>4.2.1.5.3.15</p> <p>4.2.1.5.3.16</p> <p>4.2.1.5.3.17</p>	<p>once it enters into force, will be the “fourth pillar” of the international regulatory regime for quality shipping, complementing the key Conventions of the International Maritime Organization (IMO) such as the International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea, 1974, as amended (SOLAS), the International Convention on Standards of Training, Certification and Watchkeeping, 1978, as amended (STCW) and the International Convention for the Prevention of Pollution from Ships, 73/78 (MARPOL)</p> <p>states that it is sometimes called the consolidated Maritime Labour Convention, 2006, as it contains a comprehensive set of global standards, based on those that are already found in 68 maritime labour instruments (Conventions and Recommendations), adopted by the ILO since 1920</p> <p>states that the new Convention brings almost all of the existing maritime labour instruments together in a single new Convention that uses a new format with some updating, where necessary, to reflect modern conditions and language</p> <p>explains that the Convention “consolidates” the existing international law on all these matters</p> <p>states that the MLC, 2006, applies to all ships engaged in commercial activities (except fishing vessels, ships of traditional build and warships or naval auxiliaries)</p> <p>states that ships of 500 GT or over are required to be certified: they must carry a Maritime Labour Certificate as well as a Declaration of Maritime Labour Compliance</p> <p>states that ships below 500 GT are subject to inspection at intervals not exceeding three years</p> <p>explains that the existing ILO maritime labour Conventions will be gradually phased out as ILO Member States that have ratified those Conventions ratify the new Convention, but there will be a transitional period when some parallel Conventions will be in force</p> <p>explains that countries that ratify the Maritime Labour Convention, 2006, will no longer be bound by the existing Conventions when the new Convention comes into force for them</p> <p>explains that countries that do not ratify the new Convention will remain bound by the existing Conventions they have ratified, but those Conventions will be closed to further ratification</p> <p>describes that the Convention is organized into three main parts: the Articles coming first set out the broad principles and obligations which is followed by the more detailed Regulations and Code (with two parts: Parts A and B) provisions</p> <p>states that the Regulations and the Standards (Part A) and Guidelines (Part B) in the Code are integrated and organized into general areas of concern under five Titles:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">- Title 1: Minimum requirements for seafarers to work on a ship: minimum age, medical certificates, training and qualification, recruitment and placement. - Title 2: Conditions of employment:		
--	--	--	--



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

	<p>Seafarers Employment Agreements, Wages, Hours of Work and Hours of Rest, Entitlement to Leave, Repatriation, Seafarer compensation for the ship's Loss or Foundering, Manning Levels, Career and Skill Development and Opportunities for Seafarers' Employment</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Title 3: Accommodation, recreational facilities, food and catering - Title 4: Health protection, medical care, welfare and social security protection: Medical Care on-board ship and Ashore, Shipowners' Liability, Health & Safety Protection and Accident Prevention, Access to Shore-based Welfare Facilities, Social Security - Title 5: Compliance and enforcement: Flag State Responsibilities: General Principles, Authorization of Organizations, Maritime Labour Certificate and Declaration of Maritime Labour Compliance, Inspection and Enforcement, On-board Complaint Procedures, Marine Casualties Port State Responsibilities: Inspections in Port, Detailed Inspection, Detentions, On-shore Seafarer Complaint Handling Procedures Labour-supplying Responsibilities: Recruitment and Placement services, Social security provisions <p>These five Titles essentially cover the same subject matter as the existing 68 maritime labour instruments, updating them where necessary</p>		
4.2.1.5.3.18	explains that it occasionally contains new subjects in comparison to the existing ILO maritime labour conventions, particularly in the area of occupational safety and health to meet current health concerns, such as the effects of noise and vibration on workers or other workplace risks		
4.2.1.5.3.19	explains that the standards in the new Convention are not lower than existing maritime labour standards as the aim is to maintain the standards in the current maritime labour Conventions at their present level, while leaving each country greater discretion in the formulation of their national laws establishing that level of protection		
4.2.1.5.3.20	explains that the advantages for ships of ratifying countries that provide decent conditions of work for their seafarers will have protection against unfair competition from substandard ships and will benefit from a system of certification,		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

<p>4.2.1.5.3.21</p>	<p>avoiding or reducing the likelihood of lengthy delays related to inspections in foreign ports explains that the Maritime Labour Convention, 2006, aims to establish a continuous “compliance awareness” at every stage, from the national systems of protection up to the international system and it will improve compliance and enforcement:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">- Starting with the individual seafarers, who - under the Convention – have to be properly informed of their rights and of the remedies available in case of alleged non-compliance with the requirements of the Convention and whose right to make complaints, both on board ship and ashore, is recognized in the Convention.- It continues with the shipowners. Those that own or operate ships of 500 gross tonnage and above, engaged in international voyages or voyages between foreign ports, are required to develop and carry out plans for ensuring that the applicable national laws, regulations or other measures to implement the Convention are actually being complied with.- The Masters of these ships are then responsible for carrying out the shipowners’ stated plans, and for keeping proper records to evidence implementation of the requirements of the Convention.- As part of its updated responsibilities for the labour inspections for ships above 500 gross tonnage that are engaged in international voyages or voyages between foreign ports, the flag State (or recognized organization on its behalf) will review the shipowners’ plans and verify and certify that they are actually in place and being implemented.- Ships will then be required to carry a maritime labour certificate and a declaration of maritime labour compliance on board.- Flag States will also be expected to ensure that national laws and regulations implementing the Convention’s standards are respected on smaller ships that are not covered by the certification system.- Flag States will carry out periodic quality assessments of the effectiveness of their national systems of compliance, and their reports to the ILO under article 22 of the Constitution will need to provide information on their inspection and certification systems, including on their methods of quality assessment.- This general inspection system in the flag State (which is founded on ILO Convention No. 178) is complemented by procedures to be followed in countries that are also or even primarily the source of the world’s supply of seafarers, which will similarly be reporting under article 22 of the ILO Constitution.- The system is further reinforced by voluntary measures for inspections in foreign ports (port State control)		
<p>4.2.1.5.3.22</p>	<p>states that the appendices to the Convention contain key model documents: a maritime labour certificate and a declaration of maritime labour compliance</p>		
<p>4.2.1.5.3.23</p>	<p>explains that the Maritime Labour Certificate would be issued by the flag State to a ship that flies its flag, once the</p>		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

<p>4.2.1.5.3.24 4.2.1.5.3.25 4.2.1.5.3.26</p>	<p>State (or a recognized organization that has been authorized to carry out the inspections) has verified that the labour conditions on the ship comply with national laws and regulations implementing the Convention states that the certificate would be valid for five years subject to periodic inspections by the flag State explains that the declaration of maritime labour compliance is attached to the certificate and summarizes the national laws or regulations implementing an agreed-upon list of 14 areas of the maritime standards and setting out the shipowner's or operator's plan for ensuring that the national requirements implementing the Convention will be maintained on the ship between inspections states that the lists of the 14 areas that must be certified by the flag State and that may be inspected, if an inspection occurs, in a foreign port are also set out in the Appendices to the Convention</p>		
<p>4.2.1.5.4 4.2.1.5.4.1 4.2.1.5.4.2 4.2.1.5.4.3 4.2.1.5.4.4 4.2.1.5.4.5 4.2.1.5.4.6 4.2.1.5.4.7 4.2.1.5.4.8 4.2.1.5.4.9</p>	<p>Collision International Convention for the Unification of Certain Rules of Law with Respect to Collision Between Vessels states that when collision is accidental, is caused by 'force majeure' or if the cause is left in doubt, the damages are borne by those who have suffered them states that if collision is caused by the fault of one of the vessels, liability to make good the damage attaches to the one which committed the fault explains the apportionment of liability when two or more vessels are in fault explains that liability attaches where the collision is caused by the fault of a pilot even when the pilot is carried by compulsion of law describes the duties of the Master after a collision explains that the Convention extends to the making good of damages which a vessel has caused to another vessel or to goods or persons on board either vessel, either by the execution or non-execution of a manoeuvre or by the non-observance of regulations, even if no collision has actually taken place states that in the event of a collision or any other incident of navigation concerning a sea-going ship and involving the penal or disciplinary responsibility of the Master or any other person in the service of the ship, criminal or disciplinary proceedings may be instituted only before the judicial or administrative authorities of the State of which the ship was flying the flag at the time of the collision or other incident of navigation states that no arrest or detention of the vessel should be ordered, even as a measure of investigation, by any authorities other than those whose flag the ship is flying states that nothing in the present Convention is to prevent any State from permitting its own authorities, in case of</p>		<p>3.2.1.6.4</p>



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

4.2.1.5.4.10	collision or other incidents of navigation, to take any action in respect of certificates of competence or licences issued by that State or to prosecute its own nationals for offences committed while on board a ship flying the flag of another State states that the Convention does not apply to collisions or other incidents of navigation occurring within the limits of a port or in inland waters and that the High Contracting Parties are at liberty to reserve to themselves the right to take proceedings in respect of offences committed within their own territorial waters'		
4.2.1.5.5 4.2.1.5.5.1 4.2.1.5.5.2 4.2.1.5.5.3 4.2.1.5.5.4 4.2.1.5.5.5 4.2.1.5.5.6 4.2.1.5.5.7 4.2.1.5.5.8 4.2.1.5.5.9 4.2.1.5.5.10 4.2.1.5.5.11	Assistance and salvage International Convention on Salvage, 1989 (The London Salvage Convention) defines 'salvage operation', 'vessel' and 'property' describes the 'no cure — no pay' principle describes the application of the Convention describes the duties of the salvor, of the owner and of the Master describes the rights of salvors states the criteria for assessing a reward as: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - salvaged value of property (ship, cargo and bunkers) - skill and efforts of salvor - measure of success - nature and degree of danger - expenses of salvor - equipment used - vessel's equipment used - time taken to complete the salvage operation - preventing or minimizing the damage to environment states the criteria for assessing Special Compensation explains that the apportionment of the remuneration amongst the owners, Master and other persons in the service of each salving vessel is to be determined by the law of the vessel's flag explains that every agreement as to assistance or salvage entered into at the moment and under the influence of danger may, at the request of either party, be annulled, or modified by the court, if it considers that the conditions agreed upon are not equitable describes the reasons for the court to set aside the agreed remuneration in whole or in part (salvor's fault, neglect,	3.0	



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

	fraud or dishonesty)		
4.2.1.5.5.12	states that no remuneration is due from persons whose lives are saved except as provided in national law		
4.2.1.5.5.13	describes the rights of salvors of human life who have taken part in the salvage operations		
4.2.1.5.5.14	states that every Master is bound, so far as he can do so without serious danger to his vessel, her crew and her passengers, to render assistance to everybody, even though an enemy, found at sea in danger of being lost		
4.2.1.5.5.15	explains that the convention also applies to assistance or salvage services rendered by or to a ship of war or any other ship owned, operated or chartered by a State or Public Authority		
4.2.1.5.5.16	explains the provision of security by the owner and the application of the salvor's maritime lien		
	Lloyd's Standard Form of Salvage Agreement (LOF, 2020)		
4.2.1.5.5.17	states that LOF 2020 should be used where the ship or marine environment are at risk and the Master has insufficient time to request the owner to arrange salvage services on a the basis of a pre-agreed rate or sum		
4.2.1.5.5.18	describes the Contractor's agreed endeavours to save the ship and/or cargo, bunkers and stores and while performing the salvage services to prevent or minimize damage to the environment		
4.2.1.5.5.19	explains that the LOF 2020 form does not need to be on board; the Masters of the vessels involved simply need to expressly agree to its terms before the salvage services commence		
4.2.1.5.5.20	describes the exception to the 'no cure — no pay' principle		
4.2.1.5.5.21	explains that LOF 2020 superseded LOF 2011 and where a salvor offers services on LOF 2011 or some other terms, the Master of the vessel in difficulties should attempt to get agreement to LOF 2020 terms		
4.2.1.5.5.22	explains that LOF 2020 is regarded by the International Salvage Union as a major advance, with clear, user-friendly language and many innovations		
4.2.1.5.5.23	states that LOF 2020 is a single sheet (2-page) document (whereas LOF 95 consists of 6 pages) in a simplified format		
4.2.1.5.5.2	states that the Contractor's remuneration is to be fixed by arbitration in London and any differences arising out of the Agreement are to be dealt with in the same way		
4.2.1.5.5.25	states that the provisions of the Agreement apply to salvage services, or any part of such services, referred to in the Agreement which have been already rendered by the Contractor at the date of the Agreement		
4.2.1.5.5.26	states that English Law is the governing law of the Agreement and of arbitration under it		
4.2.1.5.5.27	describes the obligation of the owners, their servants and agents to cooperate with the salvors		
4.2.1.5.5.28	describes the Contractor's duty immediately after the termination of the services to notify the Council of Lloyd's and where practicable the owners of the amount for which he requires security		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation

No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

4.2.1.5.5.29	explains that the owners of the vessel, their servants and their agents should use their best endeavours to ensure that cargo owners provide their proportion of security before the cargo is released		
4.2.1.5.5.30	explains that, pending the completion of the security, the Contractor has a maritime lien on the property salvaged for his remuneration briefly describes how claims for arbitration are decided		
4.2.1.5.5.31	states that the Master or other person signing LOF on behalf of the property to be salvaged enters into the agreement as agent for the vessel her cargo, freight, bunkers, stores and any other property thereon and the respective owners thereof and binds each to the due performance thereof		
4.2.1.5.5.32	states that when there is no longer any reasonable prospect of a useful result leading to a salvage reward in accordance with Convention Article 13 the owners of the vessel shall be entitled to terminate the services of the Contractor by giving notice to the Contractor in writing		
4.2.1.5.5.33	describes the provisions for special compensation set out in Convention Article 13		
4.2.1.5.5.34	explains that Personal effects of Master, crew and passengers including any car accompanying a passenger are excluded from reward for salvage as per the LOF 2020		
4.2.1.5.5.35	states that the currency of award as per the LOF 2020 is USA \$		
4.2.1.5.5.36	states that as per LOF 2020, the salvors have right to terminate when “no longer any reasonable prospects of useful result”		
4.2.1.5.5.37	states that in the LOF 2020, SCOPIC clause is introduced as an alternative to Art 14 set out in the convention		
4.2.1.5.5.38	states that as per LOF 2020, the Master is authorized to sign on behalf of cargo interests		
4.2.1.5.5.39	explains that LOF 2020 defines the conditions under which a casualty is in a safe condition for redelivery to the owner which can be of crucial importance in the closing stages of a salvage operation		
	Special Compensation P and I Club (SCOPIC) Clause		
4.2.1.5.5.40	explains that SCOPIC clause is supplementary to any Lloyd’s Form Salvage Agreement “No Cure - No Pay” (“Main Agreement”) which incorporates the provisions of Article 14 of the International Convention on Salvage 1989 (“Article 14”)		
4.2.1.5.5.41	explains that the Contractor has the option to invoke by written notice to the owners of the vessel the SCOPIC clause at any time of his choosing regardless of the circumstances and, in particular, regardless of whether or not there is a “threat of damage to the environment”		
4.2.1.5.5.42	explains that SCOPIC clause determines the method of assessing special compensation where payable under Article 14(1) to 14(4) of the Convention		
4.2.1.5.5.43	explains that special compensation assessed in accordance with the SCOPIC clause is called “SCOPIC remuneration”		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation

No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka

Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

4.2.1.5.5.44	explains that the SCOPIC remuneration is payable only by the owners of the vessel (and not by the cargo owners) and is only payable to the extent that it exceeds the total Article 13 award (the salvage award)		
4.2.1.5.5.45	explains that where the owner of the vessel is a member of a P&I club the club is normally required to pay the special compensation hence interest and involvement of the P&I clubs in drafting the SCOPIC clause		
4.2.1.5.5.46	explains that the assessment of SCOPIC remuneration commences from the time the written notice is given to the owners of the vessel and services rendered before the said written notice will not be remunerated under this SCOPIC clause at all but in accordance with Convention Article 13 as incorporated into the Main Agreement (“Article 13”)		
4.2.1.5.5.47	explains that the owners of the vessel have to provide the Contractor within 2 working days (excluding Saturdays and Sundays and holidays usually observed at Lloyd’s) after receiving written notice from the contractor invoking the SCOPIC clause, a bank guarantee or P&I Club letter (called “the Initial Security”) in a form reasonably satisfactory to the Contractor providing security for his claim for SCOPIC remuneration in the sum of US\$3 million, inclusive of interest and costs		
4.2.1.5.5.48	explains that the rates are based on time and materials plus an uplift of 25% in all cases		
4.2.1.5.5.49	explains that in the absence of agreement, any dispute concerning the proposed Guarantor, the form of the security or the amount of any reduction or increase in the security in place shall be resolved by the Arbitrator		
4.2.1.5.5.50	explains that if the owners of the vessel do not provide the Initial Security within the said 2 working days, the Contractor, at his option, and on giving notice to the owners of the vessel, shall be entitled to withdraw from all the provisions of the SCOPIC clause and revert to his rights under the Main Agreement including Article 14 which shall apply as if the SCOPIC clause had not existed		
4.2.1.5.5.51	explains that the Owner and Contractor both have option to terminate SCOPIC under certain agreed circumstances		
4.2.1.5.5.52	explains that even when the SCOPIC clause is invoked, the duties and liabilities		
4.2.1.5.5.53	of the Contractor remains the same as under the Main Agreement, namely to use his best endeavours to save the vessel and property thereon and in so doing to prevent or minimize damage to the environment		
4.2.1.5.5.54	explains that the assessment of SCOPIC remuneration includes the prevention of pollution as well as the removal of pollution in the immediate vicinity of the vessel insofar as this is necessary for the proper execution of the salvage		
4.2.1.5.5.55	explains that the owner has the right to send on board a casualty Representative (SCR)		
4.2.1.5.5.56	explains that Underwriters have the right to send one special hull representative and one special cargo representative (collectively called the “Special Representatives”)		
4.2.1.5.5.57	explains that the salvage Masters are required to send daily reports to Lloyd’s and the owner until SCR arrives and thereafter to SCR		
4.2.1.5.5.58	explains that the SCOPIC remuneration is not a General Average expense to the extent that it exceeds the Article 13 Award; any liability to pay such SCOPIC remuneration is that of the shipowner alone and no claim whether direct,		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

<p>4.2.1.5.5.59</p> <p>4.2.1.5.5.60</p>	<p>indirect, by way of indemnity or recourse or otherwise relating to SCOPIC remuneration in excess of the Article 13 Award is to be made in General Average or under the vessel's Hull and Machinery Policy by the owners of the vessel</p> <p>explains that any dispute arising out of this SCOPIC clause or the operations is to be referred to Arbitration as provided for under the Main Agreement</p> <p>explains that a non-binding code of practice has been agreed between the International Salvage Union (ISU) and the International Group of Clubs</p>		
<p>4.2.1.5.6</p> <p>4.2.1.5.6.1</p> <p>4.2.1.5.6.2</p> <p>4.2.1.5.6.3</p> <p>4.2.1.5.6.4</p> <p>4.2.1.5.6.5</p> <p>4.2.1.5.6.6</p> <p>4.2.1.5.6.7</p> <p>4.2.1.5.6.8</p>	<p>Convention on Limitation of Liability for Maritime Claims, 1976 (LLMC 1976)</p> <p>lists the persons entitled to limit liability</p> <p>lists the claims subject to limitation of liability</p> <p>lists the claims exempted from limitation</p> <p>explains the circumstances in which limitation would be barred</p> <p>explains that, except for claims in respect of death or injury of passengers, the calculation of limits of liability is based on the ship's gross tonnage</p> <p>explains that the limit for claims in respect of death or injury of passengers is based on the number of passengers the ship is authorized to carry, subject to a maximum sum</p> <p>describes the constitution of a limitation fund</p> <p>states the scope of application of the Convention</p>		
<p>4.2.1.5.7</p> <p>4.2.1.5.7.1</p> <p>4.2.1.5.7.2</p> <p>4.2.1.5.7.3</p> <p>4.2.1.5.7.4</p> <p>4.2.1.5.7.5</p> <p>4.2.1.5.7.6</p> <p>4.2.1.5.7.7</p>	<p>Classification societies</p> <p>explains the reasons for having a ship classed with a classification society</p> <p>states that the majority of ships are built under survey</p> <p>explains that the classification society approves plans, examines the manufacture of parts and tests materials during the building of hull, machinery, equipment and, where appropriate, refrigerating machinery</p> <p>explains that equipment refers to anchors, chain cables, mooring ropes and wires, mooring arrangements, windlasses and mooring winches</p> <p>states that, if requested, the classification societies will also survey and certificate cargo handling equipment</p> <p>states that on satisfactory completion of surveys and sea trials the society issues certificates of class, which are kept aboard ship, and enters the particulars of the ship in its register</p> <p>states that a classification society will also survey an existing ship and providing it meets the society's rules regarding scantlings, materials, workmanship and condition, assign a class to it</p>		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

4.2.1.5.7.8	states that to retain its class a ship must undergo periodical surveys as laid down in the society's rules		
4.2.1.5.7.9	states that periodical surveys are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - annual survey - docking survey at approximately 2-yearly intervals - intermediate survey - special survey every 4 years, which may be extended to 5 years 		
4.2.1.5.7.10	explains the special survey requirements may be met by a system of continuous survey such that the interval between successive surveys on any given item does not exceed 5 years		
4.2.1.5.7.11	states that an occasional survey, additional to the regular surveys, must be conducted after any damage to the hull, machinery or equipment which may affect the ship's seaworthiness		
4.2.1.5.7.12	states that repairs or alterations must be carried out under survey and to the satisfaction of the society's surveyors		
4.2.1.5.7.13	states that classification societies carry out surveys for the issue of statutory certification on behalf of many governments		
4.2.1.5.7.14	states that a classification society may be asked to conduct the loading port survey on its classed refrigerating machinery		
4.2.1.5.7.15	explains that, when convenient, the loading port survey may be combined with a periodical survey for classification		
4.2.1.5.8	Cargo	3.0	3.2.1.6.8
4.2.1.5.8.1	International Convention for the Unification of Certain Rules of Law Relating to Bills of Lading, as Amended by the Protocol of 1968 (Hague-Visby Rules)		
4.2.1.5.8.2	defines: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - carrier - contract of carriage - goods - ship - carriage of goods 		
4.2.1.5.8.3	lists the duties of the carrier to make the ship seaworthy and fit for the carriage of cargo		
4.2.1.5.8.4	describes the carrier's duty to care for the cargo		
4.2.1.5.8.5	describes the duty of the carrier, Master or agent of the carrier to issue a bill of lading		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation

No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka

Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

4.2.1.5.8.6	lists the information which should be shown in a bill of lading		
4.2.1.5.8.7	explains that a bill of lading is prima facie evidence of the receipt by the carrier of the goods as described in it and proof to the contrary is not admissible when the bill of lading has been transferred to a third party acting in good faith		
4.2.1.5.8.8	explains that the shipper is deemed to have guaranteed the accuracy of marks, number, quantity and weight as furnished by him, and that the shipper is to indemnify the carrier against loss arising from inaccuracies in such particulars		
4.2.1.5.8.9	explains the duty of the carrier, Master or agent to issue a 'shipped' bill of lading after the goods are loaded, provided the shipper surrenders any previously taken up document of title		
4.2.1.5.8.10	explains the mandatory domain of the Hague-Visby rules		
4.2.1.5.8.11	explains the carrier's liability for loss or damage arising or resulting from unseaworthiness		
4.2.1.5.8.12	states that whenever loss or damage has resulted from unseaworthiness, the burden of proving due diligence is on the carrier		
4.2.1.5.8.13	lists the exceptions to the carrier's responsibility for loss or damage		
4.2.1.5.8.14	explains the shipper's responsibility for loss or damage sustained by the carrier or ship		
4.2.1.5.8.15	states the right to deviate for the purpose of saving life or property		
4.2.1.5.8.16	explains the limitation of liability for loss or damage and the circumstances in which benefit of limitation is lost		
4.2.1.5.8.17	describes the provisions regarding goods of an inflammable, explosive or dangerous nature		
4.2.1.5.8.18	explains the liability of the carrier's servants (Himalaya clause)		
4.2.1.5.8.19	explains that this Convention does not apply to charter parties, but, if bills of lading are issued under a charter party, they must comply with the terms of this		
4.2.1.5.8.20	states that any lawful provisions regarding general average may be inserted in a bill of lading		
4.2.1.5.8.21	explains that, in certain circumstances, goods may be carried under an agreement between the carrier and shipper in any contractual terms not contrary to public policy, provided that no bill or lading is issued and that the terms agreed are embodied in a non-negotiable receipt, marked as such		
4.2.1.5.8.22	explains that the Rules do not prevent a carrier or shipper entering into any agreement regarding loss or damage to goods prior to the loading on, and subsequent to, the discharge from the ship on which the goods are carried by sea		
4.2.1.5.8.23	states that the Convention does not affect the rights and obligations of the carrier under any statute relating to the limitation of the liability of owners of sea-going ships		
4.2.1.5.8.24	describes the scope of application of the provisions of this Convention		
4.2.1.5.8.25	describes briefly the system of documentary credit in the sale of goods during shipment		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

Casualty Investigation Code			
4.2.1.5.8.26	explains the general procedures for the conduct of casualty investigations under the IMO Casualty Investigation Code		
	Charter parties	3.0	
4.2.1.5.8.27	states that a charter party is a contract between the shipowner and the charterer for the use of a ship or her cargo space explains that a voyage charter party is a contract to carry a specified, normally full, cargo between named ports at an agreed freight rate		
4.2.1.5.8.28	explains that the shipowner remains responsible for the operation of the ship and the costs involved, but the charterer sometimes pays the stevedoring charges states that contracts are normally drawn up using standard charter party forms amended as required by alterations and additional clauses		
4.2.1.5.8.29	describes the tendering of notice of readiness at the loading port explains that if the ship is not ready to receive cargo, whether alongside or not, by the cancellation date the charterer may cancel the charter		
4.2.1.5.8.30	explains what is meant by laytime and the terms 'running days/hours', 'Sundays and holidays excepted' and 'weather working days'		
4.2.1.5.8.31	states that the laytime for loading and discharging may be stated separately or as a total states that all times relevant to cargo working should be recorded in the logbook and time sheets for the calculations of laytime completed as a check on the charterer's laytime statement		
4.2.1.5.8.32	explains that if cargo work is not completed within the permitted laytime, the charterer is liable to pay demurrage at the agreed rate per day or hour until it is completed explains that time lost due to defects of the ship or its equipment is not counted in the laytime		
4.2.1.5.8.33	explains that in the event of cargo work being completed before the expiration of laytime, dispatch is usually payable by the shipowner to the charterer		
4.2.1.5.8.34	states that bills of lading are normally issued under a voyage charter party and signed by the Master or on his behalf explains that the bills of lading may incorporate the terms of the charter party which, in any case, take precedence over the bills of lading as between shipowner and charterer explains that when bills of lading have been transferred to a third party they constitute the contract between the shipowner and that party states that a voyage charter party may be arranged to cover a stated number of successive voyages or an unspecified		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation

No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka

Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

4.2.1.5.8.35	number of voyages to be performed in a given time states that in a time charter party the charterer agrees to hire the ship for a specified period of time explains that the charterer may use the vessel for any voyage he wants within the trading area agreed in the charter party		
4.2.1.5.8.36	explains that the charterer pays for bunkers and for cargo loading and discharging, port dues, canal dues and pilotage states that owners pay crew costs and for provisions, necessary stores, insurance of the ship and the costs of maintaining the ship in class and keeping it in an efficient condition to carry out the charterer's wishes		
4.2.1.5.8.37	states that the charter party contains a description of the ship, including its speed and fuel consumption explains that inability to maintain the warranted speed or consumption as a result of heavy weather or other cause should be substantiated by entries in the logbook states that crew overtime in connection with the cargo is usually for the account of the charterer, and separate time sheets should be kept		
4.2.1.5.8.38			
4.2.1.5.8.39	explains that the off-hire clause states the circumstances in which payment of hire ceases during time lost to the charterer		
4.2.1.5.8.40	explains that off-hire deductions may be made for time lost due to reduced speed resulting from defects of ship or machinery, for the cost of additional fuel and for extra expenses		
4.2.1.5.8.41	states that the Master is usually required to sign bills of lading as presented to him by the charterer or the charter party may give the charterer the right to sign them on his behalf		
4.2.1.5.8.42	states that a time charter party may be used for a single round voyage		
4.2.1.5.8.43	describes the Master's actions regarding damage done by stevedores to the ship or cargo		
4.2.1.5.8.44	explains that demise or bareboat charter party is a leasing arrangement in which the charterer operates the ship as if it were his own		
4.2.1.5.8.45	states that the Master and crew are employed by the charterer, to whom they are responsible as if he were the owner		
4.2.1.5.8.46	explains that a tonnage contract or contract of affreightment may be used where a shipper needs to transport large quantities over a long period		
4.2.1.5.8.47			
4.2.1.5.8.48	explains that the contract does not name particular ships and the shipowner is free to use any suitable ship, his own or chartered, for each shipment		
4.2.1.5.8.49	states that the loading dates are specified and that punctual performance is essential		
4.2.1.5.8.50	states that each individual shipment is normally subject to the terms of a conventional voyage charter party		
	Hamburg Rules' maritime legislation		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

4.2.1.5.8.51	explains the effect of charges where goods are carried under Hamburg Rules		
4.2.1.5.8.52	explains carrier's extended liability for loss or damage to the goods		
4.2.1.5.8.53	explains reductions to exception to liability, inward and outward bills of lading, live animals and deck cargo		
4.2.1.5.9	General average and marine insurance	3.0	
	The York-Antwerp Rules, 1974		
4.2.1.5.9.1	states that where the York-Antwerp Rules apply, general average should be adjusted according to the Rules to the exclusion of any law or practice inconsistent with them		
4.2.1.5.9.2	defines a general average act		
4.2.1.5.9.3	states that general average sacrifices and expenses are to be borne by the different contributing interests on the basis of these Rules		
4.2.1.5.9.4	explains that only such losses, damages or expenses which are the direct consequence of the general average act are allowed as general average and that no indirect loss whatsoever will be admitted		
4.2.1.5.9.5	explains that rights to contribution in general average when the event which gave rise to the sacrifice was due to the fault of one of the parties to the adventure		
4.2.1.5.9.6	states that the onus of proof is upon the party claiming in general average to show that the loss or expense claimed is properly allowable as general average		
4.2.1.5.9.7	states that any extra expense incurred in place of another expense which would have been allowable as general average is deemed to be general average, but only up to the amount of the general average expense avoided		
4.2.1.5.9.8	explains that general average is to be adjusted, as regards both loss and contribution, on the basis of values at the time and place when and where the adventure ends		
4.2.1.5.9.9	states that the general principles contained in Rules A to G are amplified by numbered rules I to XXII, dealing with specific points of practice		
4.2.1.5.9.10	states that the Master should make a declaration of general average, as is required by the law and custom of the port, at a port of refuge and at a discharging port when general average damage to the cargo is suspected		
4.2.1.5.9.11	explains the duty of the Master to see to it that general average contributions (average bonds) are collected for the benefit of those entitled to them, whether they are cargo owners or shipowners, exercising the shipowner's lien on the cargo, where necessary, until they are paid		
4.2.1.5.10	Marine insurance and liability	6.0	
4.2.1.5.10.1	explains in general terms the purpose of marine insurance		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

4.2.1.5.10.2	explains what is meant by an insurable interest		
4.2.1.5.10.3	describes briefly how insurance is arranged through brokers		
4.2.1.5.10.4	explains the principle of 'utmost good faith'		
4.2.1.5.10.5	explains the effect of misrepresentation or non-disclosure of material circumstances known to the assured		
4.2.1.5.10.6	explains 'warranty' and the effect on a marine insurance policy of breach of warranty		
4.2.1.5.10.7	describes briefly voyage policies, time policies and floating policies		
4.2.1.5.10.8	explains what is meant by deviation and how the insurer is discharged from liability from the moment a ship deviates under a voyage policy		
4.2.1.5.10.9	lists permitted deviations		
4.2.1.5.10.10	explains that a deviation clause will often permit the assured to extend his cover at a premium to be arranged,		
4.2.1.5.10.11	provided the insurer is given prompt notice of the deviation ('held covered' clause)		
4.2.1.5.10.12	describes briefly the perils usually covered in a marine insurance policy		
4.2.1.5.10.13	explains the use of 'Institute Clauses'		
4.2.1.5.10.14	explains the 'duty of assured' clause ('Sue and Labour' clause)		
4.2.1.5.10.15	distinguishes between partial loss, total loss and constructive total loss		
4.2.1.5.10.16	explains what is meant by 'particular average'		
4.2.1.5.10.17	explains the doctrine of subrogation		
4.2.1.5.10.18	explains the function of Protection and Indemnity Associations (P and I clubs)		
4.2.1.5.10.19	explains the function of Protection and Indemnity Associations (P and I clubs)		
4.2.1.5.10.20	lists risks, liabilities and expenses covered by P and I clubs		
	Noting and extending protests		
4.2.1.5.10.21	explains that a 'note of protest' is a declaration by the Master of circumstances beyond his control which may give, or may have given, rise to loss or damage		
4.2.1.5.10.22	states that protests are made before a notary public, magistrate, consular officer or other authority		
4.2.1.5.10.23	states that protests should be noted as soon as possible, and in any case, within 24 hours of arrival in port		
4.2.1.5.10.24	states that, at the time of noting protest, the Master should reserve the right to extend it		
4.2.1.5.10.25	states that protests concerning cargo damage should be made before starting to unload		
4.2.1.5.10.26	explains that, although there is no requirement to use a special form, it is usual to do so		
4.2.1.5.10.27	explains that statements under oath are taken from the Master and other members of the crew and that such statements must be supported by appropriate entries in the logbook, which must be produced		
	states that certified copies of the note of protest should be forwarded to the owners and one copy retained on board		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

4.2.1.5.10.28	explains why protest should be noted at each discharging port and not just at the first port of call		
4.2.1.5.10.29	states that a note of protest is advisable when:		
4.2.1.5.10.30	<ul style="list-style-type: none">- during the voyage the ship has experienced weather conditions which may result in damage to cargo, the ship is in any way damaged, or there is reason to suspect that damage may have occurred- normal ventilation of perishable cargo has not been practicable on account of weather- cargo is shipped in such a condition that it is likely to deteriorate during the voyage (bills of lading must be appropriately endorsed)- the charterer or his agent commits any serious breach of the terms of the charter party- consignees fail to discharge cargo, take delivery or pay freight in accordance with the terms of a charter party or bill of lading, any general average act has occurred		
4.2.1.5.10.31	states that, in cases where damage is found to have occurred, it is necessary to extend protest to support claims states that the Master should consult his owner's agent about the local requirement and practice for extending a protest		
4.2.1.5.10.32	states that the Master must normally appear in person accompanied by a number, depending upon local custom, of crew members as witnesses. Letter of protest		
4.2.1.5.10.33	explains that a letter of protest, which may also be simply called a "protest", is a written communication intended to convey and record dissatisfaction on the part of the protester (the sender) concerning some matter over which the recipient has control, and holding the recipient responsible for any (legal or financial) consequences of the matter being complained of		
4.2.1.5.10.34	explains that a letter of protest may help to substantiate a claim by the owner, or refute a claim by a charterer, harbour authority, etc., and may prove useful, if properly filed, in the resolution of a dispute long after the related event states that a letter of protest should not be confused with a protest noted or lodged before a notary public or consul		
4.2.1.5.10.35	explains that a letter of protest may be sent, in appropriate circumstances, by the Master of any ship, large or small, in any trade, and can be expected to be received by the Master of any ship. They are especially common (in both directions) in the tanker trades, where a variety of reasons give occasion for their sending		
4.2.1.5.10.36	explains that letters of protest are in most cases in connection with cargo operations, although they may be written about almost any matter where there may be legal liability, whether there is a contractual arrangement between the employers of the sender and recipient (as in the case of cargo-related protests) or not (as in the case of a protest sent to the Master of a closely berthed ship that is causing damage to the sender's ship)		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

4.2.1.5.10.37	explain that some companies, especially those in the oil, gas or chemical trades, supply their Masters with a stock of printed proforma protest forms phrased in the company's "house" style, while others expect their Masters to compose suitable protest letters when required		
4.2.1.5.11	Stowaways		
4.2.1.5.11.1	explains that as per IMO Guidelines - a "stowaway" is defined as "a person who is secreted on a ship, or in a cargo which is subsequently loaded on the ship, without the consent of the shipowner or the Master or any other responsible person, and who is detected on board after the ship has departed from a port and is reported as a stowaway by the Master to the appropriate authorities"		
4.2.1.5.11.2	explains that an international convention relating to stowaways was adopted in Brussels in 1957, but it has not yet entered into force		
4.2.1.5.11.3	explains that according to the P&I clubs (who deal with many stowaway incidents), certain parts of the world are high-risk areas for stowaways		
4.2.1.5.11.4	explains that since the P&I clubs invariably have the latest intelligence on stowaway risks, Masters should endeavour to obtain their latest club bulletins and information		
4.2.1.5.11.5	explains that at any port in a high-risk area, great care should be taken to ensure that stowaways do not board, and the following safeguards should be observed: <ul style="list-style-type: none">- A watch should be kept on the accommodation ladder or gangway.- Stevedores should only be allowed to work in restricted areas and a watch should be kept on them.- Open spaces should be closed as far as possible.- A search of the ship should be carried out before the ship sails.- All open-top containers on the quay should be checked. All containers on the quay should be stacked door-to-door, if possible		
4.2.1.5.11.6	explains IMO has introduced various guidelines on stowaway matters, the latest being in Resolution A.871(20), adopted on 27 November 1997, and its Annex, "Guidelines on the Allocation of Responsibilities to seek the successful resolution of stowaway cases"		
4.2.1.5.11.7	explains that the guidelines in the resolution state that the resolution of stowaway cases is difficult because of different national legislation in the various countries involved, nevertheless, some basic principles can be applied generally		
4.2.1.5.11.8	explains that as per the IMO guideline there are nine basic principles which can be applied generally with respect to		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation

No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

4.2.1.5.11.9	<p>stowaway cases, the second of these is that stowaway/asylum-seekers should be treated in compliance with international protection principles as set out in international instruments (including the UN Convention relating to the Status of Refugees of 28 July 1951 and the UN Protocol relating to the Status of Refugees of 31 January 1967) and relevant national legislation, the ninth is that stowaway incidents should be dealt with humanely by all parties involved. Due consideration should always be given to the operational safety of the ship and to the well-being of the stowaway</p> <p>explains that paragraph 5.1 of the IMO Guidelines lists responsibilities of the Master in stowaway cases, which are as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">- to make every effort to determine immediately the port of embarkation of the stowaway;- to make every effort to establish the identity, including the nationality/citizenship of the stowaway;- to prepare a statement containing all information relevant to the stowaway, in accordance with information specified in the standard document annexed to these Guidelines, for presentation to the appropriate authorities;- to notify the existence of a stowaway and any relevant details to his shipowner and appropriate authorities at the port of embarkation, the next port of call and the flag State;- not to depart from his planned voyage to seek the disembarkation of a stowaway to any country unless repatriation has been arranged with sufficient documentation and permission for disembarkation, or unless there are extenuating security or compassionate reasons;- to ensure that the stowaway is presented to appropriate authorities at the next port of call in accordance with their requirements;- to take appropriate measures to ensure the security, general health, welfare and safety of the stowaway until disembarkation.		
4.2.1.5.11.10	<p>explains the procedure to be adopted, in general, on the discovery at sea of stowaways, which is:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">- The owner or manager, as appropriate, should be contacted. The owner will normally contact the P&I club's managers to decide on a course of action. The P&I club's correspondent serving the next port of call will normally be contacted by the club managers. The correspondent should be able to advise what information will be required by port State and other officials.- An entry should be made in the Official Log Book recording the discovery of the stowaways.- The compartment or area in which the stowaways were found should be searched. Any documents or articles		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation

No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka

Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

of clothing, etc. may give an indication of their place of origin. (Most countries only allow a stowaway to be landed if he has the necessary travel documents to return to his own country. Stowaways rarely have any documentation, however, and some will try to destroy all clues as to their identity.)

- The clothing of the stowaways should be searched for indications as to their origin.
- The agent at the next port of call should be contacted and instructed to advise the appropriate authorities of the port State of the presence of stowaways on board.
- Each stowaway found should be individually interviewed in order to establish the following details:
 - name of stowaway;
 - stowaway's date and place of birth;
 - nationality of stowaway;
 - name, date and place of birth of either or both of the stowaway's parents;
 - postal and residential address of the stowaway and either parent;
 - stowaway's passport or seaman's book number, together with date and place of issue; and
 - stowaway's next of kin, if different from above.
- Stowaway details should be obtained, the completed details should be communicated to the agent and the P&I club correspondent at the next port of call.
- Photographs of each stowaway should be taken and, where digital camera facilities are available, transmitted to the P&I club correspondent; these may enable travel documents to be obtained more quickly on the ship's arrival.
- All stowaways should be housed in some part of the crew accommodation which can be locked when necessary.
- The stowaways should not be locked in their accommodation when the vessel is at sea and well clear of land unless they are considered a threat to the safety of the ship or personnel on board. Consideration should be given, however, to the possibility of unguarded stowaways launching a liferaft or boat in an attempt to reach land.
- The stowaways should be locked securely in their accommodation when the vessel approaches any port or nears any land. (Consideration should be given to the possibility of the stowaways' escape through open scuttles.)
- The stowaways should be provided with adequate food, water, sanitary facilities, etc.
- The stowaways should be treated in a humane manner.



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - The stowaways should not be made to work for their keep. - The stowaways should not be signed on the Crew Agreement and should not be entered on any List of Crew. A “Stowaway List” should be made recording any known particulars, ready for production to port officials. - Evidence of costs relating to the stowaway case, such as fuel, insurance, wages, stores, provisions and port charges, should be gathered to support the owner’s claim on his P&l policy. (The owner’s costs associated with the landing of stowaways are usually recoverable from his P&l club.) - Full details of all events and particulars relating to the stowaway incident should be recorded in the Official Log Book, if necessary in an annexed document. (This may be used as part of any report required by owners, the club, etc.) 		
4.2.1.5.11.11	explains that arriving with stowaways on board can have complications		
4.2.1.5.11.12	explains that the IMO Guidelines on the Allocation of Responsibilities to seek the Successful Resolution of Stowaway Cases state (in paragraph 3) that the resolution of stowaway cases is difficult because of different national legislation in each of the potentially several countries involved: the country of embarkation, the country of disembarkation, the flag State of the vessel, the country of apparent, claimed or actual nationality/citizenship of the stowaway, and countries of transit during repatriation		
4.2.1.5.11.13	explains that the IMO Guidelines on the Allocation of Responsibilities to seek the Successful Resolution of Stowaway Cases contain (in paragraph 4) certain basic principles which can be applied generally, the first of these is that there is recognition that stowaways arriving at or entering a country without the required documents are, in general, illegal entrants. Decisions on dealing with such situations are the prerogative of the countries where such arrival or entry occurs, the third is that the shipowner and his representatives on the spot, the Master, as well as the port authorities and national Administrations, should cooperate as far as possible in dealing with stowaway cases states that in every case the agent should be notified of the presence of stowaways in advance of arrival		
4.2.1.5.11.14	explains that under the U.S. Refugee Act 1980 a stowaway who arrives in the USA can request political asylum		
4.2.1.5.11.15	explains that the Immigration and Naturalization Service (INS) has taken the position that shipowners are required to provide 24-hour armed guards during the entire asylum process which can take months		
4.2.1.5.11.16	explains that there have been cases where the owner has incurred costs in excess of \$1 m for such detention		
4.2.1.5.11.17	explains that many countries impose very heavy penalties (in some cases of over US\$200,000) on Masters who fail to ensure that stowaways are kept securely on board in port		
4.2.1.5.11.18			
4.2.1.5.12	Ship’s agents and agency		
4.2.1.5.12.1			



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation

No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka

Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

4.2.1.5.12.2	<p>explains that as per United Nations Conference on Trade and Development, UNCTAD Minimum Standards For Shipping Agents, “Shipping agent” means any person (natural or legal) engaged on behalf of the owner, charterer or operator of a ship, or of the owner of cargo, in providing shipping services including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">- Negotiating and accomplishing the sale or purchase of a ship;- Negotiating and supervising the charter of a ship;- Collection of freight and/or charter hire where appropriate and all related financial matters- Arrangements for Customs and cargo documentation and forwarding of cargo- Arrangements for procuring, processing the documentation and performing all activities required related to dispatch of cargo;- Organizing arrival or departure arrangements for the ship;- Arranging for the supply of services to a ship while in port		
4.2.1.5.12.3	<p>explains the authority of the agency and where it may be actual authority or apparent authority (also called ostensible authority)</p>		
4.2.1.5.12.4	<p>explains that actual authority may be express or implied</p> <p>states that express authority is given by words (spoken or written) such as when an officer is appointed by letter to command of a ship and authority is implied when it is inferred by the conduct of the parties and the circumstances of the case, such as when a ship Master is appointed to command by a shipowner, who thereby implicitly authorizes him to carry out, on the owner’s behalf, all the usual things that fall within the scope of a Master’s position, e.g. engagement and discharge of crew, signing of bills of lading, and purchasing of</p>		
4.2.1.5.12.5	<p>provisions</p> <p>explains that an exception to this would be where the principal has expressly placed a restriction on the implied authority of the agent, e.g. where the Master is expressly prohibited from signing bills of lading</p>		
4.2.1.5.12.6	<p>describes the different types of agent and agency</p>		
4.2.1.5.12.7	<p>explains that agents are normally either general agents or special agents</p>		
4.2.1.5.12.8	<p>explains that a general agent is an agent who has authority to act for his principal in all matters concerning a particular trade or business, or of a particular nature, many liner agents, for example, act as general agent in a particular city or country for one or more carriers</p>		
4.2.1.5.12.9	<p>explains that a special agent is an agent appointed for the carrying out of particular duties which are not part of his normal business activities</p>		
4.2.1.5.12.10	<p>explains that a special agent’s authority is therefore limited by his actual instructions, most port agents are special agents since their authority does not extend beyond their actual instructions</p>		
4.2.1.5.12.11			



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

4.2.1.5.12.12 4.2.1.5.12.13 4.2.1.5.12.14 4.2.1.5.12.15 4.2.1.5.12.16 4.2.1.5.12.17 4.2.1.5.12.18	<p>states that shipmasters are similarly special agents for purposes of engaging and discharging crew, purchasing ships' stores and bunkers, and making salvage agreements in certain cases</p> <p>outlines that an agent's duties to his principal are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">- to perform his duties in person, using ordinary skill and diligence, and if he purports to have special skills, to use his special skills also;- to obey lawful instructions of his principal, and when he is not instructed on a particular matter, to act in his principal's best interests;- to disclose all information relevant to the agency to the principal, avoiding any conflict of interest;- to maintain confidentiality about matters communicated to him as agent, and not to disclose them to prospective third parties;- to keep proper accounts of all transactions and render them to his principal on request;- not to make extra profits from the agency without disclosing them to his principal <p>explains that under the terms of voyage charters port agents are normally appointed, and therefore paid for, by the shipowner. However, many voyage charterers insist on nominating port agents, and are entitled to do so if the charter party is suitably claused to that effect</p> <p>explains where a charter party provides that "the vessel shall be consigned to Charterers' agents....", it means that the charterer will nominate agents</p> <p>explains that when on a time charter, most of the "voyage costs" associated with earning the freight or other revenue are normally for the time charterer's account, and it can be expected that port agents will be appointed by the charterer in order to look after his commercial interests</p> <p>explains that the charterer's obligation to provide and pay for agents may be in a "Charterers to provide" clause, or a separate Agency Clause or Consignment Clause</p> <p>explains that any "protecting" or "husbandry agent" used will be nominated and appointed by the shipowner</p> <p>explains that the shipping agents have to adhere to a Code of professional conduct given in United Nations Conference on Trade and Development, UNCTAD Minimum Standards For Shipping Agents, which states that the shipping agent shall:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">- discharge his duties to his principal(s) with honesty, integrity and impartiality;- apply a standard of competence in order to perform in a conscientious, diligent and efficient manner all services undertaken as shipping agent;- observe all national laws and other regulations relevant to the duties he undertakes;- exercise due diligence to guard against fraudulent practices;- exercise due care when handling monies on behalf of his principal(s)		
---	--	--	--



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

4.2.1.5.13	Port of refuge procedures	3.0	
4.2.1.5.13.1	states that a “port of refuge” is a port or place that a vessel diverts to when her Master considers it unsafe to continue the voyage due to a peril that threatens the “common safety”, e.g. when there is a dangerous ingress of water into the vessel, a dangerous shift of cargo, the vessel adopts an angle of loll, there is a serious fire on board, etc.		
4.2.1.5.13.2	explains that where such a deviation is for the preservation from peril of property involved in a common maritime adventure, it will usually constitute a general average act and the costs of the deviation to and stay at the port of refuge will be allowed in general average		
4.2.1.5.13.3	explains that where the shipowner or carrier is a party to a contract of carriage, discontinuation of the voyage is a deviation from the contract		
4.2.1.5.13.4	explains that a deviation to a port of refuge will be regarded as a justifiable deviation if the reason can be shown to be a valid one within the terms of the contract. All contractual rights would, in that case, be unaffected		
4.2.1.5.13.5	explains that if the reason for deviating could not be shown to be valid, the deviation would be considered unjustifiable and the consequences could be severe for the shipowner or carrier, in that it would probably constitute a repudiatory breach of the contract, making the owner/carrier liable for all costs of any accident to ship or cargo sustained during the deviation		
4.2.1.5.13.6	outlines that valid reasons for deviating to a port of refuge usually include: <ul style="list-style-type: none">- weather, collision or grounding damage affecting seaworthiness of the ship;- serious fire;- dangerous shift of cargo;- serious machinery breakdown;- any other accident causing some serious threat to the vessel and cargo;- shortage of bunkers (if it can be proved that the vessel left port with adequate bunkers for the foreseeable voyage, and ran short as a consequence of weathering exceptionally severe weather, contamination, etc.)		
4.2.1.5.13.7	explains that a “Port of refuge” is a term usually associated with a general average act since, under the York-Antwerp Rules, certain costs and expenses incurred in making for, entering, staying at and leaving a port or place of refuge, even where the ship returns to her port or place of loading, are admitted as general average describes the explanation given in Rule X for expenses at port of refuge provided in the York-Antwerp Rules explains that a port or place where a vessel seeks temporary shelter from adverse weather is not a port of refuge, since running for shelter is “ordinary” practice and not “extraordinary” in the context of Rule A of the York-Antwerp		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation

No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka

Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

4.2.1.5.13.8 4.2.1.5.13.9 4.2.1.5.13.10 4.2.1.5.13.11 4.2.1.5.13.12 4.2.1.5.13.13	<p>Rules</p> <p>explains that a “common maritime adventure” is said to be terminated on completion of discharge of cargo (or disembarkation of passengers) at the port of destination following a general average act. If the voyage is abandoned at an intermediate port (e.g. a port of refuge), then the adventure terminates at that port</p> <p>explains that a declaration of general average should be formally made in compliance with local law and custom before delivery of cargo at the termination of the voyage, in order to initiate an adjustment</p> <p>explains that the declaration is usually made by the shipowner or the Master, but in some countries any one of the interested parties may make it. The owners or agent should be able to advise on local requirements</p> <p>explains the procedure for any particular port or place of refuge in general, the following basic steps should be followed:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">- as soon as the decision is taken to discontinue the voyage and make for a port or place of refuge (whether under tow or otherwise) inform the owner and charterer (if any), stating the reason for the deviation- record the ship’s position. Sound tanks for quantity of bunkers on board. From this point until departure from the port or place of refuge, keep accurate records of events and expenditure, etc., for eventual delivery to the owner and average adjuster- request the owner to arrange the appointment of an agent at the port of refuge to handle the vessel’s visit- if the cause of the deviation is an accident” inform the flag State- call the agent as soon as his identity is known. Pass ETA and information necessary for making preparations for the vessel’s arrival, including tonnage, length, flag, P&l club, classification society, etc. Request the agent to notify:<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Port State Administration if vessel is damaged or seaworthiness is affected.• harbour master or port authority. Inform port authority of the full facts, as the authority may want to keep vessel outside port until cargo is discharged, etc. Give details of the nature and severity of damage, mentioning any disabled nav aids, steering gear, machinery, etc. State any pollution hazard.• pilot station, linesmen, boatman, customs, port health, immigration, etc.• local correspondent of the owner’s P&l club. (See club handbook for name and address, or ask owners.) A representative from the correspondent firm, or a surveyor appointed by the correspondent, should attend on arrival. <p>- on arrival at the port or place of refuge, the salvor (if any) will require salvage security, which should be arranged by the owner and cargo owners. Failing this, the salvor may have vessel arrested pending satisfaction</p>		
--	---	--	--



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation

No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@sltnet.lk

4.2.1.5.13.14	<p>of his claim.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">- obtain health clearance in accordance with local regulations (as advised by the agent).- enter vessel in with Customs “under average”.- inform the owner (and charterer, if any) of vessel’s safe arrival.- owners will declare general average. (Any of the parties involved may declare general average, but the owners will normally do this since they are closest to “the action”.)- note protest as soon as possible but in any case within 24 hours, in compliance with local custom (ask the agent about this), reserving the right “to extend at a time and place convenient”.- where there is hull or machinery damage, the agent should be requested to notify local Lloyd’s Agent (a requirement of the Notice of Claim and Tenders Clause in Institute Time Clauses - Hulls 1.10.83).- hull and machinery underwriters normally instruct a surveyor, in major cases from the Salvage Association.- where there is hull or machinery damage, a class surveyor, if available at the port, will inspect and report on the damage, stipulating repairs necessary for the vessel to maintain class. Temporary repairs may be acceptable.- if no class surveyor is available, the class society should be contacted, and will advise the appropriate steps to take in order for class to be maintained until a port can be reached for survey, the old practice of requesting two independent Masters or engineers to inspect temporary repairs and issue a Certificate of Seaworthiness should no longer be necessary. Even where a class surveyor cannot reach a damaged ship, the classification society can usually be notified of the damage and asked for instructions.- if cargo damage is probable, or cargo discharge is necessary before repairs can be made, call a hatch survey before commencing discharge. Employ only registered and unbiased surveyors recommended by the P&l club correspondent. Cargo interests should be notified so that they can appoint their own surveyors. Remember that cargo surveyors are appointed by cargo interests and may criticize the Master’s actions or allege that the vessel was unseaworthy. Be guided by the P&l club correspondent as to who to allow on board and about making statements which may adversely affect the owner’s legal position.- if the voyage is being terminated and cargo owners are taking delivery of their consignments, General Average Bond and General Average Guarantee forms will first have to be signed. The owner’s lien on cargo should be exercised if necessary; this should be discussed with the owner and agent.- arrange cargo discharge (under survey) and either trans-shipment or warehousing of cargo during the repairs, if necessary. (This will depend on the length of time in port, nature of cargo, etc.)- on receipt of class surveyor’s report re hull/machinery damage, the owner will advertise for tenders.		
---------------	--	--	--



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation

No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

4.2.1.5.13.15	<p>(Superintendents and the Salvage Association surveyor will jointly attend to this, bearing in mind the Notice of Claim and Tenders Clause and underwriters' power of veto. Tenders should only be accepted with guidance from Salvage Association surveyor and Lloyd's or IUA Agent.)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">- carry out repairs under class and Salvage Association surveyors' guidance.- on completion of repairs, class surveyor will carry out another survey. If, in his opinion, the vessel is seaworthy he will issue an Interim Certificate of Class, and will send his report to the classification society. If acceptable to the society's committee, the vessel will retain class. If the class surveyor is employed by an authorized society, he may also issue provisional statutory certificates on behalf of MCA (or other flag State Administration) to enable the vessel to continue her voyage.- reload cargo (under survey) if voyage being continued.- extend Protest to include all details of the damage and repairs. Obtain copies for owners.- port agent will pay repairers. (If unpaid, repairers will have a maritime lien on the vessel.) Allow general average and Salvage Association surveyors (representing H&M insurers) to see the agent's account before paying.- send all relevant documents to the owner for onwards delivery to the average adjuster.- enter vessel outwards with Customs (in accordance with local regulations, as advised by the agent). <p>Obtain outwards clearance.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">- continue the voyage. <p>explains that in most general average cases the main evidence required for the adjustment comes from the various survey reports, supported by statements by witnesses and ship's records</p> <p>outlines the evidence required at port of refuge as listed below:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">- full and accurate records should be kept of the general average incident and the call at the port of refuge, including details of all the various parties involved and their actions- photographs and video footage may be useful; the general average statement may take more than a year to produce- where salvage services are engaged, a full record should be kept of the salvor's actions and of the equipment used by both parties- in order to assess the various contributory values, the average adjuster will require the following documents:<ul style="list-style-type: none">• all general average security documents including signed average bonds, average guarantees, counterfoils of average deposit receipts and cancelled deposit receipts;• casualty reports from the Master;		
---------------	--	--	--



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@sltnet.lk

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • certified extracts from deck and engine room logs; • copies of extended protests; • survey reports on hull and machinery damage; • survey reports on cargo lost or damaged by general average sacrifice; • account sales of any cargo sold; • copies of any shipping invoices; • copies of telexes; • accounts for disbursements incurred together with all supporting vouchers; • cargo valuation forms; • manifest of cargo on board at time of the general average act; • copies of bills of lading; • portage account for the voyage, and an account of stores consumed; • any other evidence relating to the casualty 		
<p>4.2.1.5.14</p> <p>4.2.1.5.14.1</p> <p>4.2.1.5.14.2</p> <p>4.2.1.5.14.3</p> <p>4.2.1.5.14.4</p> <p>4.2.1.5.14.5</p> <p>4.2.1.5.14.6</p>	<p>Master/pilot relationship</p> <p>explains that the “maritime pilot” referred to in this section does not include deep-sea pilots or shipmasters or crew who are certificated or licensed to carry out pilotage duties in particular areas.</p> <p>reviews the applicable contents of IMO Assembly resolution A.960(23), Recommendations on training and certification and operational procedures for maritime pilots other than deep-sea pilots.</p> <p>explains that the law in most countries makes clear that while a maritime pilot is engaged in pilotage duties aboard a vessel in compulsory pilotage waters the pilot has conduct of the vessel and directs the navigation of the vessel, subject to the Master’s overall command of the ship and the ultimate responsibility for its safety. In this respect, the navigation of a ship in compulsory pilotage waters is a shared responsibility between the pilot and the Master/bridge team</p> <p>explains that maritime pilots are expected to act in the public interest and to maintain a professional judgement that is independent of any economic pressures to the ship or other desires that do not comport with the needs of maritime safety. Because of these duties, a maritime pilot is not considered a member of the bridge “team”, but a maritime pilot is expected to develop and maintain a cooperative, mutually-supportive working relationship with the Master and bridge team in recognition of the respective responsibility of each for the safe navigation of the vessel</p> <p>explains the provisions relating to pilotage contained in STCW, section A-VIII, part 4-1, paragraph 49</p> <p>explains that the Master has the right, and in fact the duty, to intervene or</p>		<p>3.2.1.6.14</p>



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@sltnet.lk

<p>4.2.1.5.14.7</p> <p>4.2.1.5.14.8</p>	<p>displace the pilot in circumstances where the pilot is manifestly incompetent or incapacitated or the ship is in immediate danger (<i>'in extremis'</i>) due to the pilot's actions or intentions.</p> <p>explains that the Master should generally:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - see that the ship's navigation is monitored (including plotting fixes/positions on charts) as if there were no pilot on board; - ensure that officers, helmsmen, etc. attend to the pilot's requests with efficiency and courtesy; - instruct the officer-of-the-watch that he has charge of the vessel whilst under pilotage, unless specifically informed otherwise by the Master; - clearly state his/her opinion to the pilot on important matters of navigation and manoeuvring <p>states that the shipowner is generally liable for the consequences of negligent navigation whilst the ship is under pilotage</p>		
<p>4.2.1.6</p> <p>4.2.1.6.1</p> <p>4.2.1.6.2</p> <p>4.2.1.6.3</p> <p>4.2.1.6.4</p> <p>4.2.1.6.5</p> <p>4.2.1.6.6</p> <p>4.2.1.6.7</p>	<p>Methods and aids to prevent pollution of the marine environment by ships</p> <p>Convention of the Prevention of Marine Pollution by Dumping of Wastes and Other Matter (London Dumping Convention) (LDC)</p> <p>explains the aims of the Convention</p> <p>defines, for the purpose of the Convention:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - dumping - wastes or other matter - special permit <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - general permit <p>states that the dumping of wastes or other matter in whatever form or condition, as listed in annex I, is prohibited</p> <p>states that the dumping of wastes or other matter listed in annex II requires a prior special permit</p> <p>states that the dumping of all other wastes or matter requires a prior general permit</p> <p>explains that the provisions of Article IV do not apply when it is necessary to secure the safety of human life or of vessels in cases of 'force majeure' caused by stress of weather, or in any case which constitutes a danger to human life or a real threat to vessels</p> <p>states that such dumping should be done so as to minimize the likelihood of damage to human or marine life and must be reported immediately</p>		<p>3.2.1.8</p>



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

4.2.1.6.8	states that the Addendum to annex I contains regulations on the incineration of wastes at sea		
4.2.1.6.9	explains that the appropriate authority of a Contracting Party should issue prior special or general permits in respect of matter intended for dumping: <ul style="list-style-type: none">- loaded in its territory- loaded by a vessel flying its flag when the loading occurs in the territory of a State not party to the Convention		
	International Convention Relating to Intervention on the High Seas in Cases of Oil Pollution Casualties, 1969		
4.2.1.6.10	describes the rights of Parties to the Convention to intervene on the high seas		
4.2.1.6.11	following a maritime casualty		
4.2.1.6.12	defines, for the purposes of the Convention: <ul style="list-style-type: none">- maritime casualty- ship- oil- related interests		
4.2.1.6.13	describes the provisions which a coastal State should apply when exercising the right to take measures in accordance with Article I		
4.2.1.6.14	Protocol relating to Intervention on the High Seas in Cases of Pollution by Substances other than Oil, 1973		
4.2.1.6.15	describes the rights of Parties to the Protocol to intervene on the high seas following a maritime casualty		
	defines 'substances other than oil'		
4.2.1.6.16	explains that the Protocol extends the rights and obligations of coastal States to cases involving imminent threat of pollution by substances other than oil		
4.2.1.6.17			
4.2.1.6.18	International Convention on Civil Liability for Oil Pollution Damage, 1969 (CLC 1969)		
4.2.1.6.19	states that no claim for compensation may be made against the servants or agents of the owner explains that, with certain exceptions, the owner may limit his liability by constituting a fund for the sum representing the limit of his liability with the Court of a Contracting State where the action is brought		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

4.2.1.6.20	states that claims in respect of expenses reasonably incurred by the owner voluntarily to prevent or minimize pollution damage rank equally with other claims against the fund		
4.2.1.6.21	explains that where a fund has been constituted and the owner is entitled to limit his liability, no person having a claim for pollution damage resulting from that incident is entitled to exercise any rights over other assets of the owner and that the ship or any other property belonging to the owner should be released		
4.2.1.6.22	states that the owner of a ship registered in a Contracting State and carrying more than 2,000 tons of oil in bulk as cargo is required to maintain insurance in the sum of his limit of liability states that the appropriate authority of a Contracting State, after determining that the requirements have been complied with, should issue a certificate attesting that insurance or other financial security is in force states that the certificate should be carried on board ship and a copy deposited with the relevant authorities states that a Contracting State must not permit a ship under its flag to which this Article applies to trade without a certificate		
4.2.1.6.23	states that Contracting States must ensure under their national legislation, that insurance or other security is in force in respect of any ship, whenever registered, entering or leaving their ports of offshore terminals if the ship actually carries more than 2,000 tons of oil in bulk as cargo		
4.2.1.6.24	National legislation for implementing international agreements and conventions		
4.2.1.6.25	explains the process by which international agreements and conventions are ratified and implemented into national legislation	3.0	

05. Electronic Navigation Systems (ENS) (Total number of hours - 126)

REF. NO	KNOWLEDGE, UNDERSTANDING AND PROFICIENCY	DURATION	COURSE NOTE REF. NO
5.1	Determine position and the accuracy of resultant position fix by any means		
5.1.1	Using modern electronic navigational aids, with specific knowledge of their operating principles, limitations, sources of error, detection of misrepresentation of information and methods of correction to		1.2.1.3



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

<p>5.1.1.1</p> <p>5.1.1.2</p> <p>5.1.1.3</p> <p>5.1.1.4</p> <p>5.1.1.5</p>	<p>obtain accurate position fixing</p> <p>ensures that the most appropriate electronic systems and electronic navigation aids are used for position monitoring in any area given the information the system may provide and the limitations, errors and accuracy of the available system</p> <p>verifies that each electronic navigation aid used is set up and operated effectively provides guidance and support to cadets and watchkeeping officers in the correct set-up and use of electronic navigation aids</p> <p>assesses the accuracy of position monitoring using electronic navigation aids</p> <p>ensures that the vessel position is determined at appropriate frequencies and monitored continuously using the most appropriate electronic navigation aids available and this is cross checked with terrestrial or celestial observations where these are possible</p>		
<p>5.1.2</p> <p>5.1.2.1</p> <p>5.1.2.2</p> <p>5.1.2.3</p> <p>5.1.2.4</p> <p>5.1.2.5</p>	<p>Integrated Navigation system (INS) and Integrated Bridge system (IBS)</p> <p>briefly describe that Integrated Navigation system (INS) ‘supports safety of navigation by evaluating inputs from several independent and different sensors, combining them to provide information giving timely warnings of potential dangers and degradation of integrity of this information’</p> <p>evaluate the three categories of INS as defined by IMO, namely:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> — INS(A), which as a minimum provides the information of position, speed, heading and time, each clearly marked with an indication of integrity — INS(B), which automatically, continually and graphically indicates the ship’s position, speed and heading and, where available, depth in relation to the planned route as well as to known and detected hazards - INS(C), which provides means to automatically control heading, track or speed and monitor the performance and status of these controls <p>states that Integrity monitoring is an intrinsic function of the INS and that in the INS the integrity of information is verified by comparison of the data derived from two or more sources if available</p> <p>states that in Integrity monitoring by the INS, the integrity is verified before essential information is displayed or used and information with doubtful integrity should be clearly marked by the INS and not used for automatic control systems</p> <p>explains that the Integrated Bridge systems (IBS) is ‘a combination of systems which are interconnected in order to allow’ centralized access to sensor information or command/control workstations, with the aim of increasing safe and efficient ship’s management by suitably qualified personnel’</p>		<p>1.2.1.4</p>



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

5.1.2.6	states that IBS recommendation apply to a system performing two or more operations, namely: passage execution; communication; machinery control; loading, discharging and cargo control; and safety and security		
5.1.2.7	describes the limitations of the systems		
5.2	Determine and allow for compass errors		
5.2.1	Knowledge of the principles of magnetic and gyro-compasses		
5.2.1.1	Parts of the magnetic compass and their function		
5.2.1.1.1	explains the requirements of SOLAS chapter V, regulation 19, in regard to the requirements for the carriage of magnetic compasses		
5.2.1.1.2	explains that ships must also be fitted with a pelorus, or other means, to take bearings over an arc of 360° of the horizon and a means for correcting heading and bearings to true at all times		
5.2.1.1.3	describes the parts of the magnetic compass and explains their function		
5.2.1.1.4	briefly explains the operating principle of Transmitting Magnetic Compass (TMC)		
5.2.1.2	Errors of the magnetic compass and their correction		
5.2.1.2.1	explains the importance of keeping a record of observed deviations		
5.2.1.2.2	determines deviations and prepares a table or graph of deviations		
5.2.1.2.3	defines the approximate coefficients A, B, C, D and E		
5.2.1.2.4	states the equation for the deviation on a given heading in terms of the coefficients		
5.2.1.2.5	describes the conditions which give rise to each of the coefficients		
5.2.1.2.6	explains the use of the approximate coefficients A, B,C, D and E		
5.2.1.2.7	describes why coefficients A and E may exist at a badly sited compass		
5.2.1.2.8	explains the non-magnetic causes of an apparent coefficient A		
5.2.1.2.9	explains that coefficient B results partly from the ship's permanent magnetism and partly from induced magnetism		
5.2.1.2.10	explains that induced magnetism may also contribute to coefficient C in a badly sited compass		
5.2.1.2.11	describes how the deviation associated with the coefficient permanent B varies with magnetic latitude		
5.2.1.2.12	describes how the deviation associated with the coefficient induced B varies with magnetic latitude		
5.2.1.2.13	explains why the deviation due to permanent magnetism should be compensated by permanent magnets and deviation due to induced magnetism by spherical soft iron correctors, where possible		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

5.2.1.2.14	describes the causes of heeling error and how it varies with heel, course and magnetic latitude		
5.2.1.2.15	describes the correction of heeling error and why the correction does not remain effective with change of magnetic latitude		
5.2.1.2.16	defines the constants lambda 1 and lambda 2		
5.2.1.2.17	defines the constant mu		
5.2.1.2.18	explains how the soft iron spheres increase the mean directive force towards magnetic north and that the value of lambda with the spheres in place is called the ship's multiplier		
5.2.1.2.19	describes the vertical force instrument and its use in correcting heeling error		
5.2.1.2.20	describes methods of obtaining a table of deviations		
5.2.1.2.21	analyses a table of deviations to obtain approximate coefficients		
5.2.1.2.22	states that anything which could affect the deviation of the compass should be stowed in its seagoing position before correcting it		
5.2.1.2.23	explains the adjustment of the compass by the analysis and/or tentative methods and obtains a table of residual deviations		
5.2.1.2.24	states the order in which corrections should be made and explains why they are made in that order		
5.2.1.2.25	describes how heeling error may produce an unsteady compass on certain headings after a large change of magnetic latitude and how to deal with it		
5.2.1.2.26	explains why a large coefficient B may appear after a large change of magnetic latitude and how to correct it		
5.2.1.2.27	describes how subpermanent magnetism gives rise to retentive error		
5.2.1.2.28	states that deviations may be affected by cargo of a magnetic nature, the use of electromagnets for cargo handling, or repairs involving hammering or welding of steelwork in the vicinity of the compass		
5.2.1.2.29	defines the magnetic moment of a bar magnet as the product of the pole strength and the length of the magnet		
5.2.1.2.30	states that, for a suspended magnet vibrating in a magnetic field, T^2 is proportional to $1/H$, where T is the period of vibration and H is the field strength		
5.2.1.2.31	explains how the relative strengths of two fields may be found		
5.2.1.3	Principles of gyrocompass		
5.2.1.3.1	reviews the operating principles of the mechanical/ballistic gyrocompass		
5.2.1.3.2	explains the operating principle of other types of gyrocompass such as fibre optic gyrocompass and ring laser gyrocompass and their advantages over the mechanical/ballistic gyrocompass		
5.2.1.4	Gyrocompass errors and corrections		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

5.2.1.4.1	explains why a gyrocompass that is damped in tilt will settle with its spin axis at a small angle to the meridian, except when at the equator		
5.2.1.4.2	states that the resulting error is known as latitude error or damping error and varies directly as the tangent of the latitude		
5.2.1.4.3	states that latitude error can be removed by a manual setting that mechanically moves the lubber line and the follow-up system to show the correct heading		
5.2.1.4.4	states that course and speed error is caused by the tilting of the spin axis, resulting from the ship's motion over the surface of the earth		
5.2.1.4.5	states that the rate of tilting, in minutes of arc per hour, is equal to the north- south component of the ship's velocity		
5.2.1.4.6	explains how the tilt causes precession in azimuth to the west on northerly headings and to the east on southerly headings in compasses with liquid ballistic control		
5.2.1.4.7	states that the velocity error is removed by manual settings of latitude and speed to offset the lubber line and the follow-up system in liquid-controlled compasses		
5.2.1.4.8	explains how the correction is made in compasses that employ other methods of detecting tilt		
5.2.1.4.9	states that ballistic deflection results from changes in the ship's north-south component of velocity		
5.2.1.4.10	explains the behaviour of a liquid ballast during a change of speed or an alteration of course		
5.2.1.4.11	explains that the precession resulting from ballistic deflection may be arranged to move the compass to the correct settling position, after allowance for the change in course and speed error, by choosing a suitable period for the compass		
5.2.1.4.12	explains that the pendulum of a tilt detector will be thrown out of the vertical during a change of course or speed, producing an error in its output		
5.2.1.4.13	explains that the method used in the above objective is not applicable for compasses without liquid ballistic control since course and speed error is fully corrected for all headings		
5.2.1.4.14	explains that errors are limited by damping the pendulum and limiting the applied torque for large deflections of the pendulum		
5.2.1.4.15	states that the sensitive element of a gyrocompass is made such that its moment of inertia about any axis is the same, thus preventing any tendency to turn when swinging pendulously as a result of rolling or pitching		
5.2.1.4.16	describes the effect of rolling on a liquid ballistic for various ship's headings		
5.2.1.4.17	explains why the movement of the liquid causes an error except on the cardinal headings		
5.2.1.4.18	explains how intercardinal rolling error is reduced to negligible proportions		
5.2.1.4.19	states that intercardinal rolling error does not occur in compasses having no gravitational control attachments to		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

5.2.1.4.20	the gyroscope states that errors caused by acceleration of the compass during rolling and pitching can be reduced by sitting the master compass low down, near the rotational centre of the ship		
5.2.1.4.21	outlines the performance standards for gyrocompasses		
5.2.2	An understanding of systems under the control of the master gyro and a knowledge of the operation and care of the main types of gyro-compass		
5.2.2.1	defines the main systems under the control of the master gyro		
5.2.2.2	defines the main types of gyrocompass in use at sea		
5.2.2.3	refers to manufacturers' manuals to determine necessary maintenance tasks		
5.3	Establish watchkeeping arrangements and procedures		
5.3.1	Bridge watchkeeping equipment and systems		
5.3.1.1	Knowledge of voyage data recorders (VDR) and bridge navigational watchkeeping alarm systems (BNWAS)		
	Voyage data recorder (VDR) and simplified voyage data recorder (S-VDR)		
5.3.1.1.1	explains that voyage data recorder (VDR) and simplified voyage data recorder (S-VDR) means a complete system, including any items required to interface with the sources of input data, for processing and encoding the data, the final recording medium in its capsule, the power supply and dedicated reserve power source		
5.3.1.1.2	explains that the purpose of a voyage data recorder (VDR) and simplified voyage data recorder (S-VDR) is to maintain a store, in a secure and retrievable form, of information concerning the position, movement, physical status, command and control of a vessel over the period leading up to and following an incident having an impact thereon		
5.3.1.1.3	explains that the information contained in a VDR and S-VDR is made available to both the Administration and the shipowner and this information is for use during any subsequent investigation to identify the cause(s) of the incident		
5.3.1.1.4	describes the operation of a VDR and S-VDR, that is it: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - continuously maintains sequential records of preselected data items relating to the status and output of the ship's equipment, and command and control of the ship 		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation

No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

<p>5.3.1.1.5</p> <p>5.3.1.1.6</p> <p>5.3.1.1.7</p> <p>5.3.1.1.8</p> <p>5.3.1.1.9</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none">- permits subsequent analysis of factors surrounding an incident, the method of recording ensures that the various data items are co-related in date and time during playback on suitable equipment. The final recording medium is installed in a protective capsule and in case of S-VDR of either a fixed or float-free type that meets all of the following requirements:<ul style="list-style-type: none">▪ is capable of being accessed following an incident but secure against tampering;▪ for VDR - it maximizes the probability of survival and recovery of the final recorded data after any incident;▪ for S-VDR - it maintains the recorded data for a period of at least two years following termination of recording;▪ is of a highly visible colour and marked with retro-reflective materials; and▪ is fitted with an appropriate device to aid location <p>explains the requirements set out in MSC resolution A.861 (20) on the fixed type protective capsule for S-VDR</p> <p>explains that the equipment is so designed that, as far as is practical, it is not possible to tamper with the selection of data being input to the equipment, the data itself nor that which has already been recorded, and any attempt to interfere with the integrity of the data or the recording is recorded</p> <p>explains that the recording method is such that each item of the recorded data is checked for integrity and an alarm is given if a non-correctable error is detected</p> <p>describes the continuity of operation of VDR and S-VDR</p> <p>lists and states the data items recorded in the VDR and S-VDR, which are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">- date and time- ship's position- ship's speed- bridge audio- communications audio- radar data, post-display selection (or, for S-VDR only, AIS data if radar data is not available) in addition to the above data sets, a VDR should also record:<ul style="list-style-type: none">▪ depth under the keel▪ status of all mandatory bridge alarms▪ rudder order and rudder position▪ engine orders and engine response (rev/min or pitch), including any transverse-thrusters		
--	---	--	--



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

<p>5.3.1.1.10</p> <p>5.3.1.1.11</p> <p>5.3.1.1.12</p> <p>5.3.1.1.13</p> <p>5.3.1.1.14</p> <p>5.3.1.1.15</p> <p>5.3.1.1.16</p> <p>Bridge navigational watch alarm system (BNWAS)</p> <p>5.3.1.1.17</p> <p>5.3.1.1.18</p> <p>5.3.1.1.19</p> <p>5.3.1.1.20</p> <p>5.3.1.1.21</p> <p>5.3.1.1.22</p> <p>5.3.1.1.23</p> <p>5.3.1.1.24</p> <p>5.3.1.1.25</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ status of hull openings ▪ status of watertight doors and fire doors ▪ wind speed and direction <p>explains the data output interface of VDR and S-VDR, that they provide an interface for downloading the stored data and playback the information to an external computer. This interface is compatible with an internationally recognized format, such as Ethernet, USB, FireWire, or equivalent</p> <p>describes the software for data downloading and playback</p> <p>states that the shipowner, in all circumstances and at all times, owns the VDR and its information</p> <p>explains that in the event of an accident the owner of the ship makes all decoding instructions available as necessary to recover the recorded information and maintains the same</p> <p>explains the recovery and relevant information of VDR and S-VDR</p> <p>explains the custody, read-out and access to the VDR and S-VDR information</p> <p>describes the limitations of the receivers</p> <p>Bridge navigational watch alarm system (BNWAS)</p> <p>explains that the carriage requirement of bridge navigational watch alarm system (BNWAS) is set out by SOLAS, chapter V/19 and the requirements will be mandatory for new ships and phased in for existing ships</p> <p>states when BNWAS must be fitted to existing ships</p> <p>explains that the purpose of BNWAS is to monitor bridge activity and detect operator disability, which could lead to marine accidents</p> <p>explains that this purpose is achieved by a series of indications and alarms to alert first the OOW and, if he/she is not responding, then to alert the Master or another qualified OOW</p> <p>explains that the system monitors the awareness of the officer-on-watch (OOW) and automatically alerts the Master or other qualified OOW if for any reason the OOW becomes incapable of performing watch duties</p> <p>explains that additionally, the BNWAS may provide the OOW with a means of calling for immediate assistance if required</p> <p>explains that the BNWAS should be operational whenever the ship's heading or track control system is engaged, unless-inhibited by the Master</p> <p>explains that the system has the following operational modes: Automatic, Manual On and Manual Off</p> <p>lists and explains the operational sequence of indications and alarms:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - once operational, the alarm system remains dormant for a period of between 3 and 12 min (Td - selected 		
--	--	--	--



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

	<p>dormant period)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">- at the end of this dormant period, the alarm system initiates a visual indication on the bridge- if not reset, the BNWAS additionally sounds a first stage audible alarm on the bridge 15 sec after the visual indication is initiated- if not reset, the BNWAS additionally sounds a second stage remote audible alarm in the back-up officer's and /or Master's location 15 sec after the first stage audible alarm is initiated- if not reset, the BNWAS additionally sounds a third stage remote alarm at locations of further crew members capable of taking corrective actions 90 seconds after the second stage remote audible alarm is initiated- in vessels other than passenger vessels, the second or third stage remote audible alarms may sound in all the above locations at the same time. If the second stage audible alarm is sounded in this way, the third stage alarm may be omitted		
5.3.1.1.26	states that in larger vessels, the delay between the second stage and third stage may be set to a longer value on installation, up to a maximum of 3 min, to allow sufficient time for back-up officer and /or Master to reach the bridge		
5.3.1.1.27	lists and explains the resetting function of the BNWAS, which are as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none">- it is not possible to initiate the reset or cancel any audible alarm from any device, equipment or system not physically located in areas of the bridge providing proper lookout- the reset function does, by a single operator action, cancel the visual indication and all audible alarms and initiate a further dormant period. If the reset function is activated before the end of the dormant period, the period is re-initiated to run for its full duration from the time of reset- to initiate the reset function, an input representing a single operator action by the OOW is required. This input may be generated by reset devices forming an integral part of the BNWAS or by external inputs from other equipment capable of registering physical activity and mental alertness of the OOW- a continuous activation of any reset device does not prolong the dormant period or cause a suppression of the sequence of indications and alarms		
5.3.1.1.28	explains that the emergency call facility may be provided on the bridge to immediately activate the second, and subsequently third stage, remote audible alarms by means of an "Emergency Call" push button or similar		
5.3.1.1.29	explains that the means of selecting the operational mode and the duration of the dormant period (Td) is security protected so that access to these controls should be restricted to the master only		
5.3.1.1.30	describes the limitation of the system		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

06. Leadership & Team Working Skills (Total number of hours - 21)

REF. NO	KNOWLEDGE, UNDERSTANDING AND PROFICIENCY	DURATION	COURSE NOTE REF. No
6.1	Use of Leadership and Managerial Skill		
6.1.1	Personnel management, organization and training on board ship		
	Shipboard personnel management		
6.1.1.1	Principles of controlling subordinates and maintaining good relationships		
6.1.1.1.1	identifies sources of authority and power		
6.1.1.1.2	discusses theories on how effective authority and power may be enhanced or diminished by management level officers on ships		
6.1.1.1.3	reviews theories in cultural awareness and cross cultural communication		
6.1.1.1.4	discusses strategies that management level officers could adopt to enhance their effectiveness in managing crews of different cultures		
6.1.1.1.5	reviews theories in human error, situational awareness, automation awareness, complacency and boredom		
6.1.1.1.6	discusses strategies that management level officers can adopt to optimize situational awareness and to minimize human error and complacency of individuals and teams		
6.1.1.1.7	reviews theories in leadership and teamwork		
6.1.1.1.8	discusses strategies that management level officers can adopt to enhance leadership and teamwork		
6.1.1.1.9	discusses theories of personnel motivation and relates these to shipboard situations encountered by management level officers		
6.1.1.1.10	explains that an individual's motivation and well being may be affected by both real and perceived influences on board ship and at home		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

6.1.1.1.11	discusses strategies that management level officers could adopt to optimize the motivation of individuals and teams		
6.1.1.1.12	discusses theories on coaching individuals and teams to improve performance		
6.1.1.1.13	discusses approaches to managing and improving the performance of oneself, individuals and teams		
6.1.1.1.14	prepares for and conducts a simulated formal performance review		
6.1.1.1.15	identifies the impact of repeated harassment including bullying on individuals		
6.1.1.1.16	recognizes indications that crew members may be physically or mentally unwell or badly demotivated		
6.1.1.1.17	describes strategies that can be adopted when a crew member is believed to be physically or mentally unwell or badly demotivated		
6.1.1.1.18	describes strategies that management level officers can take to ensure that crew remain physically well and are encouraged to remain physically active		
6.1.1.1.19	explains the need for management level officers to be fully familiar with the requirements of national law relating to crew employment and of all crew agreements in place on the ship		
6.1.1.1.20	discusses the process for signing on and discharging crew under national law		
6.1.1.1.21	discusses the need to ensure that new crew are appropriately certificated, competent and familiarized with the safety management system, security plan, working procedures and equipment of the ship		
6.1.1.1.22	explains that procedures for conducting investigations and applying consequences in disciplinary situations are governed by national law, codes of conduct, employment agreements and company procedures		
6.1.1.1.23	explains the process for investigating and applying consequences in disciplinary situations under relevant national law and procedures		
6.1.1.1.24	explains the formal process for addressing continuing levels of unacceptable performance by a crew member under national law		
6.1.1.1.25	explains the process for investigating and responding to incidents of harassment or bullying of crew members under national law		
6.1.1.1.26	explains requirements for handling crew wages, advances and allotments when this is done by management level officers on board ship		
6.1.1.2	Training		
	Training methods		
6.1.1.2.1	reviews training methods that could be adopted on-board ship		
6.1.1.2.2	discusses the effectiveness of training methods that can be adopted for training		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

<p>6.1.1.2.3 6.1.1.2.4 6.1.1.2.5 6.1.1.2.6 6.1.1.2.7 6.1.1.2.8 6.1.1.2.9</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - in attitude - in skills - in knowledge <p>describes the preparation needed before the start of a training session</p> <p>discusses methods for ensuring that crew are motivated to participate fully in training</p> <p>demonstrates how to conduct a training session for a given topic</p> <p>lists the areas in which training is required by regulation including the requirements of SOLAS</p> <p>identifies other topics where training might be desirable</p> <p>delivers a training session to other members of the class</p> <p>discusses the resources that may be available on board ship that can be used for training</p>		
<p>6.1.2</p> <p>6.1.2.1</p> <p>6.1.2.1.1 6.1.2.1.2</p> <p>6.1.2.1.3 6.1.2.1.4 6.1.2.1.5 6.1.2.1.6 6.1.2.1.7 6.1.2.1.8 6.1.2.1.9 6.1.2.1.10</p>	<p>Related international conventions recommendations, and national legislation</p> <p>Related international maritime conventions and national legislation</p> <p>ISM Code</p> <p>explains the principles underlying the ISM Code</p> <p>describes the content and application of the ISM Code</p> <p>STCW Convention</p> <p>explains the principles underlying the STCW Convention</p> <p>describes the content and application of the STCW Convention</p> <p>explains how to implement the regulations for ensuring fitness for duty</p> <p>states that seafarers new to a particular type of vessel require ship specific shipboard familiarization</p> <p>describes what shipboard familiarization may involve for watchkeeping officers</p> <p>describes what tasks or duties elementary basic safety familiarization involves for a watchkeeping officer</p> <p>describes how to organize shipboard training and how to maintain records</p> <p>states that penalties are prescribed for breaches of STCW Convention,1978, as amended requirements and that these are determined by the flag State</p>		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

6.1.2.1.11	states that national legislation is required to implement the provisions of an international convention		
6.1.2.1.12	states that for STCW Convention, 1978, as amended, national legislation is subject to scrutiny and		
	checking by IMO appointed persons		
6.1.2.1.13	states national legislation may differ from one flag to another		
	Maritime Labour Convention (MLC)		
6.1.2.1.14	demonstrates a working knowledge of the Maritime Labour Convention provisions relating to the		
	management of personnel on board ship, with particular reference to:		
	- engagement of crew		
	- employment conditions		
	- crew entitlements and repatriation		
	- medical requirements		
6.1.3	Application of task and workload management		
6.1.3.1	Task and workload management		
	-		
6.1.3.1.1	reviews theories on applying task and workload management from IMO model		
	course 1.39, Leadership and teamwork		
6.1.3.1.2	explains that the scope of activity and conflict between activities managed by		
6.1.3.1.3	management level officers is broader than for operational level officers and requires greater task and		
	workload management ability		
6.1.3.1.4	plans the task and workload allocation for significant shipboard activities so that the following are		
	considered:		
	- human limitations		
	- personal abilities		
	- time and resource constraints		
	- prioritization		
	- workload, rest and fatigue		
	-		
6.1.3.1.5	discusses strategies to monitor the effectiveness of task and workload management during an activity and		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

6.1.3.1.6	to adjust the plan as necessary discusses strategies to ensure that all personnel understand the activity to be undertaken and their tasks in this		
6.1.3.1.7	discusses whether the encouragement of a challenge and response environment is appropriate to the task and workload management of particular shipboard tasks		
6.1.3.1.8	discusses the importance of debriefs and reflection after activities have been conducted to identify opportunities for improving task and workload management		
6.1.4	Effective resource management		
6.1.4.1	- Application of effective resource management at a management level -		
6.1.4.1.1	reviews theories on effective communication		
6.1.4.1.2	demonstrates effective communication in simulated or real situations involving communications on board ship and between ship and shore		
6.1.4.1.3	discusses how management level officers can encourage other personnel to use effective communications		
6.1.4.1.4	reviews theories on effective resource allocation, assignment and prioritization		
6.1.4.1.5	demonstrates the effective allocation, assignment and prioritization of resources when managing simulated or real shipboard activities		
6.1.4.1.6	reviews theories on decision making that considers team experience		
6.1.4.1.7	demonstrates the ability to involve team member effectively in decision making when managing simulated or real shipboard activities		
6.1.4.1.8	reviews theories on assertiveness and leadership		
6.1.4.1.9	- discusses appropriate leadership styles and levels of assertiveness for management level officers in a range of shipboard activities		
6.1.4.1.10	- demonstrates the ability to apply appropriate leadership styles and levels of assertiveness when managing simulated or real shipboard activities		
6.1.4.1.11	- reviews theories on obtaining and maintaining situational awareness		
6.1.4.1.12	- demonstrates the ability to obtain and maintain situational awareness when managing complex simulated or real shipboard activities		
6.1.4.1.13	- reviews theories on the use of short and long term strategies		
6.1.4.1.14	demonstrates the ability to apply short and long term strategies when managing simulated or real shipboard activities		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

6.1.5	Decision-making techniques		
6.1.5.1	Situation and risk assessment		
6.1.5.1.1	reviews theories of situation and risk assessment		
6.1.5.1.2	discusses formal and informal approaches to risk assessment		
6.1.5.1.3	identifies typical risks that management level officers may have to assess		
6.1.5.1.4	demonstrates the ability to effectively assess risk in the planning and conduct of simulated or real shipboard activities		
6.1.5.2	Identify and generate options		
6.1.5.2.1	reviews theories on identifying and generating options		
6.1.5.2.2	demonstrates the ability to identify and generate options when making decisions as a management level officer in simulated or real shipboard activity		
6.1.5.3	- Selecting course of action		
	-		
6.1.5.3.1	- reviews theories on selecting the course of action in making decisions		
6.1.5.3.2	- demonstrates the ability to select appropriate courses of action when making decisions as a management level officer in simulated or real shipboard activity		
6.1.5.4	- Evaluation of outcome effectiveness		
	-		
6.1.5.4.1	explains how to carry out the evaluation of outcome effectiveness and the importance of doing it		
6.1.6	Development, implementation and oversight of standard operating procedures		
6.1.6.1	discusses approaches to developing standard operating procedures (SOPs)		
6.1.6.2	explains the methods to implement the SOPs		
6.1.6.3	explains why it may be desirable for there to be oversight and approval of many SOPs and explains the dangers associated with it		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

07. Watch Keeping & Orals (Total number of hours - 84)

Ref. No	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Duration	Course Notes ref. no
7.1	Establish watch keeping arrangements & procedures		
7.1.1	Thorough knowledge of content, application and intent of the International Regulations for Preventing Collisions at Sea, 1972, as amended		
7.1.1.1	demonstrates a thorough knowledge of the content, application and intent of the International Regulations for Preventing Collisions at Sea, 1972, as amended		
7.1.1.2	describes the lights, shapes and sound signals that should be shown or made by own ship in any situation		
7.1.1.3	demonstrates the ability to determine risk of collision and to take appropriate action when encountering all types of		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

7.1.1.4	vessel when in sight of one another by day or night demonstrates the ability to determine the risk of collision and the proper action to take to avoid collision in restricted visibility		
7.1.1.5	determines a safe speed for any situation		
7.1.1.6	demonstrates the ability to take appropriate actions when manoeuvring in narrow channels and traffic separation schemes including encounters with other vessels		
7.1.1.7	demonstrates the ability to maintain situational awareness, determine risk of collision and to take appropriate action in situations of high traffic density both when vessels are in sight and when in restricted visibility		
7.1.1.8	demonstrates the ability to take appropriate action when another vessel is believed not to be taking the action required under the Regulations or where a collision cannot be avoided by the action of this vessel alone		
7.2	Respond to navigational emergencies		
7.2.1	Precautions when beaching a ship		
7.2.1.1	describes the circumstances in which a vessel may be beached		
7.2.1.2	states that a gently shelving beach of mud, sand or gravel should be chosen if possible		
7.2.1.3	states that beaching should be at slow speed		
7.2.1.4	states that, when trimmed heavily by the head, beaching stern first may be advantageous		
7.2.1.5	compares the relative advantages of beaching broadside-on and at right- angles to the beach		
7.2.1.6	states that wind or tide along the shore will quickly swing the ship broadside- on to the beach		
7.2.1.7	describes measures which can be taken to prevent the ship driving further ashore and to assist with subsequent refloating		
7.2.1.8	states that ballast should be added or transferred to counteract a tendency to bump on the bottom		
7.2.1.9	states that all tanks and compartments should be sounded and an assessment made of damage to the ship		
7.2.1.10	states that soundings should be taken to establish the depth of water round the ship and the nature of the bottom		
7.2.2	Actions to be taken if grounding is imminent and after grounding		
7.2.2.1	states that, on stranding, the engines should be stopped, watertight doors closed, the general alarm sounded and, if on a falling tide, the engines should be put full astern to see if the ship will immediately refloat		
7.2.2.2	states that the engineers should be warned to change to high-level water intakes		
7.2.2.3	states that a distress or urgency signal should be transmitted and survival craft prepared if necessary		
7.2.2.4	states that all tanks and compartments should be sounded and the ship should be inspected for damage		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

7.2.2.5	states that any discharge or probable discharge of harmful substances should be reported to the nearest coast radio station		
7.2.2.6	states that soundings should be taken to establish the depth of water round the ship and the nature of the bottom		
7.2.3	Refloating a grounded ship with and without assistance		
7.2.3.1	describes measures which can be taken to prevent further damage to the ship and to assist with subsequent refloating		
7.2.3.2	explains how ballast or other weights may be moved, taken on or discharged to assist refloating		
7.2.3.3	describes the use of ground tackle for hauling off		
7.2.3.4	describes ways in which tugs may be used to assist in refloating		
7.2.3.5	describes the use of the main engine in attempting to refloat and the danger of building up silt from its use		
7.2.4	Action to be taken if collision is imminent, and following a collision or impairment of the watertight integrity of the hull by any cause		
7.2.4.1	lists the duties of the Master following a collision		
7.2.4.2	states that after impact the engines should be stopped, all watertight doors closed, the general alarm sounded and the crew informed of the situation		
7.2.4.3	states that in calm weather the colliding ship should generally remain embedded to allow the other ship time to assess the damage or prepare to abandon ship		
7.2.4.4	states that survival craft should be made ready for abandoning ship or assisting the crew of the other ship		
7.2.4.5	states that a distress or urgency signal should be made, as appropriate		
7.2.4.6	states that requests for information may be received from coastal States		
7.2.4.7	states that, if not in danger, own ship should stand by to render assistance to the other for as long as necessary		
7.2.4.8	states that any discharge or portable discharge of harmful substances should be reported to the nearest coast radio station		
7.2.4.9	states that the owners should be informed and all details of the collision and subsequent actions entered in the logbook		
7.2.5	Assessment of damage control		
7.2.5.1	states that damage to own ship should be determined		
7.2.5.2	describes measures to attempt to limit damage and save own ship		
7.2.6	Emergency steering		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

7.2.6.1	describes typical arrangements of auxiliary steering gear		
7.2.6.2	describes how the auxiliary steering gear is brought into action		
7.2.6.3	describes how to change from bridge control to local control in the steering gear compartment		
7.2.6.4	states that, when appropriate, a disabled ship should report to a coastal State that it is a potential hazard to other ships or to the environment		
7.2.6.5	lists possible course of action which may be taken by a disabled ship		
7.2.6.6	states the navigational safety message to broadcast and signals to be displayed by a disabled vessel		
7.2.7	Emergency towing arrangements and towing procedures		
7.2.7.1	states that permission from the owners or charterers is usually required before towing, except for the purpose of saving life		
7.2.7.2	states that a coastal State may intervene when a disabled ship presents a potential risk to the environment		
7.2.7.3	states that early communication should be established between the vessels to agree on the method of connecting the tow		
7.2.7.4	states that both vessels should have everything prepared and have agreed on communication before the arrival of the towing ship		
7.2.7.5	describes how to approach a disabled vessel and pass the first connection by line-throwing apparatus or other methods		
7.2.7.6	states that the tow normally passes a messenger followed by a wire messenger to the towing vessel to haul across the towing line		
7.2.7.7	describes how to pay out the towing wire under control		
7.2.7.8	describes methods of securing the towing wire at the towing ship		
7.2.7.9	explains why the wire is usually shackled to the anchor cable of the tow		
7.2.7.10	describes the preparations made by the disabled ship		
7.2.7.11	states that the towing wire should be protected from chafing at fairleads		
7.2.7.12	states that wires and cables should be inspected frequently and the nip freshened if any sign of wear or chafe is found		
7.2.7.13	describes how to take the weight of the tow		
7.2.7.14	explains how the towing speed should be decided		
7.2.7.15	describes how to disconnect the tow on arrival at the destination		
7.2.7.16	describes the emergency towing arrangements for all tankers of not less than 20,000 DWT		
7.3	Manoeuvring & handling a ship in all conditions		
7.3.1	Approaching pilot stations and embarking or disembarking pilots, with due regard to weather, tide, headreach and stopping distances		1.10.1.1



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

<p>7.3.1.1 7.3.1.2 7.3.1.3 7.3.1.4 7.3.1.5 7.3.1.6 7.3.1.7 7.3.1.8 7.3.1.9 7.3.1.10 7.3.1.11</p>	<p>explains the importance and the procedure of making a passage plan from sea to berth describes the preparations for picking up a pilot states that a second steering-gear power unit should be in operation where possible states that steering should be changed to manual in ample time and tested states that anchors should be cleared and ready for letting go explains how to reduce speed when approaching the pilot station, taking account of wind and tidal set explains why the ship's speed should be reduced to a suitable speed for the pilot boat to come alongside describes how to make a lee for the pilot boat states that extra care should be taken after dropping the pilot until clear of inward ships manoeuvring to embark pilots plans manoeuvres for the embarking and disembarking of pilots under varying environmental conditions performs manoeuvres to embark and disembark pilots in varying environmental conditions</p>		
<p>7.3.2 7.3.2.1 7.3.2.2 7.3.2.3 7.3.2.4 7.3.2.5 7.3.2.6 7.3.2.7 7.3.2.8 7.3.2.9 7.3.2.10 7.3.2.11 7.3.2.12 7.3.2.13</p>	<p>Handling ship in rivers, estuaries and restricted waters having regard to the effects of current, wind and restricted water on helm response</p> <p>defines shallow water as a depth of less than 2 times the ship's draught explains that shallow-water effects become more marked as the under-keel clearance decreases lists shallow-water effects as:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - increased directional stability and sluggish response to helm - the speed falls less during turns - a large increase in turning radius - a more pronounced effect from transverse propeller thrust - a possibility that transverse thrust may act opposite to that expected - the ship carries her way longer and responds slowly to changes in engine speed - the trim changes, usually by the head for a full hull form - an increase in squat <p>defines squat as the reduction of under-keel clearance resulting from bodily sinkage and change of trim which occurs when a ship moves through the water</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - calculates the approximate sinkage due to squat in deep water - states that the squat in shallow water (ratio of water depth/draught = 2) may be double that in deep water 		<p>1.10.1.2</p>



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

7.3.2.14	- states that squat in canals and restricted channels in proximity to other vessels may be significantly greater		
7.3.2.15	- uses a squat estimation diagram		
7.3.2.16	- explains the meaning of 'blockage factor' in restricted channels		
7.3.2.17	- explains how squat and trim effects increase with blockage factor		
7.3.2.18	- describes the reduction in keel clearance resulting from rolling and pitching and heel or list		
7.3.2.19	- states that speed should be moderate in rivers, estuaries, etc. to reduce shallow-water effects and to provide reserve power for correcting a sheer		
7.3.2.20	- describes how to round bends in a channel with a current in either direction, taking account of the effect of wind - describes the use of an anchor to assist in rounding a bend - describes how to turn short round in a narrow channel, with or without a wind - describes the use of an anchor to assist turning in a channel - explains the importance of navigating at reduced speed to avoid damage caused by own ship's bow wave or stern wave - describes how a passing ship affects a moored ship - plans manoeuvres in rivers, estuaries and restricted waters in varying environmental conditions - performs manoeuvres in rivers, estuaries and restricted waters in varying environmental conditions		
7.3.3	Application of constant rate of turn techniques -		
7.3.3.1	describes the circumstances in which a constant rate turn is appropriate		
7.3.3.2	describes how to plan a constant rate turn		
7.3.3.3	describes how to judge the correct execution of a constant rate turn by visual means		
7.3.3.4	describes how radar can be used to assist in monitoring a constant rate of turn		
7.3.3.5	describes how to determine the wheel over position bearing for a constant rate of turn		
7.3.3.6	describes how a constant rate turn is effective in helping a vessel maintain its planned trail		
7.3.3.7	plans turns using constant rate of turn techniques		
7.3.3.8	performs turns using constant rate of turn techniques		
7.3.4	Manoeuvring in shallow water including the reduction in under-keel clearance caused by squat, rolling and pitching		
7.3.4.1	describes the effect of squat on under-keel clearance, trim and vessel manoeuvring characteristics		
7.3.4.	describes the changes in dynamic under-keel clearance when manoeuvres are conducted in shallow water in		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

7.3.4.3	describes the use of the kick-ahead to control the speed and direction of the vessel		
7.3.4.4	explains how a ship will respond to helm before increasing speed when using a kick-ahead		
7.3.4.5	identifies the danger of taking a sheer in shallow water and what corrective action can be taken		
7.3.4.6	describes how tugs can be used to assist in maintaining slow speed control		
7.3.4.7	describes how anchors can be used to assist in manoeuvring a vessel in shallow water		
7.3.4.8	plans manoeuvres to be conducted in shallow water with and without the effects of sea and swell		
7.3.4.9	performs manoeuvres in shallow water		
7.3.5	Interaction between passing ships and between own ship and nearby banks (canal effect)		
7.3.5.1	explains and describes the interaction between ship and shore		
7.3.5.2	explains and describes the interaction between ships when meeting end-on		
7.3.5.3	explains and describes the interaction between ships in an overtaking situation		
7.3.5.4	explains the particular dangers of interaction when working close by other craft such as tugs		
7.3.5.5	describes the pattern of pressure changes round the hull of a moving ship		
7.3.5.6	explains the interaction between a ship and nearby banks (bank cushion and bank suction)		
7.3.5.7	describes the interaction between passing ships		
7.3.5.8	describes how to pass or overtake another ship safely in a narrow channel		
7.3.5.9	explains that shoal patches may give rise to bank cushion or suction, resulting in an unexpected sheer		
7.3.5.10	explains the possible effects on squat, trim and vessel manoeuvring characteristics with different blockage factors and speeds		
7.3.5.11	plans manoeuvres where ship to ship and ship to topography interaction are anticipated		
7.3.5.12	performs manoeuvres where ship to ship and ship to topography interaction are experienced		
7.3.6	Berthing and unberthing under various conditions of wind, tide and current with and without tugs		
7.3.6.1	describes the effects of right- and left-handed propellers on manoeuvring		
7.3.6.2	describes the use of twin screws for manoeuvring		
7.3.6.3	explains the advantages and disadvantages of controllable-pitch propellers with regard to ship handling		
7.3.6.4	describes the use of lateral thrusters		
7.3.6.5	states that lateral thrusters cease to be effective above a certain speed, which has to be determined by trial		
7.3.6.6	describes, with reference to ship type and trim, the likely effect of wind on a ship when moving ahead or astern and when stopped		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

7.3.6.7	explains how an anchor or anchors may be used to assist in manoeuvring		
7.3.6.8	describes the use of anchors for stopping in an emergency		
7.3.6.9	describes the different ways in which tugs may be made fast and used		
7.3.6.10	explains fully how to use engine, helm, tugs, anchors and mooring lines to berth and unberth under various conditions of wind and tide at: <ul style="list-style-type: none">- river berths- piers- locks- enclosed docks- a single buoy- two buoys- multibuoy berths- Mediterranean moorings		
7.3.6.11	describes the mooring lines to be used, their leads and methods of securing at the berths listed above		
7.3.6.12	explains that when wind blows against a ship, a force acts almost in the opposite direction to the relative wind direction and the magnitude is proportional to the square of the relative velocity of the wind		
7.3.6.13	states that knowing the magnitude of the wind force and how it affects the ship is of great importance during berthing/unberthing		
7.3.6.14	explains that the knowledge of above mentioned magnitude, will assist the Master to:		
7.3.6.15	decide whether the available tugs have sufficient power to hold the ship against a crosswind or to move the ship against a crosswind		
7.3.6.16	decide whether the thrusters have the necessary power to manoeuvre the ship safely under the prevailing wind conditions		
7.3.6.17	determine the effect of a longitudinal wind in respect of its effect on the ship's stopping distance		
7.3.6.18	explains that the wind force in tonnes may, with a certain approximation, be expressed by the formula: $KG(\text{wind}) = k \times A \times V^2$ Where K = wind force in tonnes k = constant depending on the ship and direction of the wind (as an average figure for k, the following constants can be		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@sltnet.lk

<p>7.3.6.19</p> <p>7.3.6.20</p>	<p>used: $k = 0.52 \times 10^{-4}$ (for a beam wind) and $k = 0.39 \times 10^{-4}$ (for a longitudinal wind)</p> <p>A = windage area in square metres</p> <p>V = relative velocity of the wind in m/sec</p> <p>explains that normally tugs cannot hold a ship against a cross current, as the power, which is necessary for such an operation, is enormous</p> <p>explains that the force (K) required to oppose a cross current in deep waters might be determined approximately by the formula:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - $K = k_{\text{deep}} \times L \times d \times V^2$ - - Where - K = current force in tonnes, - k = constant, 0.033 for deep water, - L = vessel length in metres, - d = vessel draft in metres and - V = current speed in m/sec - <p>explains that the force (K) required to oppose a cross current in shallow waters might be determined approximately by the formula:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - $K = 0.033 \times f \times L \times d \times V^2$ - - Where - K = current force in tonnes, - 0.033 is the constant, - f = the shallow water constant modifier derived from a graph, - L = vessel length in metres, - d = vessel draft in metres and - V = current speed in m/sec) - <p>plans manoeuvres to berth and unberth in varying environmental conditions and with and without tugs</p> <p>performs manoeuvres to berth and unberth in varying environmental conditions and with and without tugs</p>		
-			



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

7.3.7	Ship and Tug interaction		1.10.1.7
7.3.7.1	describes the type of tug, i.e. conventional single or twin-screw tugs fitted or not fitted with nozzles, tractor type tugs and the ASD (azimuth stern drive) tugs		
7.3.7.2	describes the main difference resulting from the location of tug's propulsion and towing point		
7.3.7.3	explains the dangers related to ship-tug interaction		
7.3.7.4	explains the dangers for relatively small tugs when compared with the size of assisted ships in relation to interaction phenomenon		
7.3.7.5	states the special attention to be paid by the Master on the condition of own vessel, i.e. ships in ballast condition or for		
7.3.7.6	ships having particular overhanging stern, found generally on large container vessels, the danger of interaction which is		
7.3.7.7	created and the danger of damages that can be caused to the tug's hull and superstructure, during the ship-tug cooperation		
7.3.7.8	explains the tug bow-cushion effect		
7.3.7.9	explains the risk during the ship-tug cooperation of the tug getting sucked under the bow of the ship with risk of capsizing, and the importance of immediate action required by the tug master, by the application of rudder and the use of available power to go full astern, to avoid above		
7.3.7.10	explains why tractor type tugs are generally found to be less vulnerable in the above mentioned situation		
7.3.7.11	explains 'girting' and the dangers associated with it		
7.3.7.12	explains the dangers of ships high speed during ship-tug cooperation		
7.3.7.13	describes the meaning of 'gob rope', and how its use on conventional tugs can improve the situation of 'girting'		
7.3.7.14	explains how the use of such 'gob rope' limits the manoeuvrability of the towing tug		
7.3.7.15	explains the precaution needed to be exercised for the tug's safety, while using the tugs, in respect to: <ul style="list-style-type: none">- the visibility of ship's bulbous bow- short towlines- excessive forward speed of the ship or sudden changes in a ship's heading and speed- experience and the ability of the crew in releasing tug's towline, when needed- underestimating wind and current forces- information exchange pilot-shipmaster-tug captain- operating bow-to-bow		
7.3.7.16	explains the importance of keeping the ship's speed and heading constant when passing or taking a towline		
7.3.7.17	explains the knowledge necessary for a Master when ordering the number and total bollard pull of tugs		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

7.3.7.18	explains the important criteria of ships' loading conditions when planning for the number of tugs and the tug position along the hull		
7.3.7.19	describes the effectiveness of tug(s), during ship-tug cooperation, in relation to pivot point, leverage, and tendency of the ship to swing in a particular direction, in the following conditions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - when the ship is stopped and making no way through the water (dead in the water) - when the ship is making headway - when the ship is making sternway 		
7.3.7.20	plans manoeuvres involving tugs to minimize adverse interaction effects and optimize tug efficiency		
7.3.7.21	performs manoeuvres involving tugs to minimize adverse interaction effects and optimize tug efficiency		
7.3.8	Use of propulsion and manoeuvring systems including various types of rudder		
7.3.8.1	describes how the use of bow-thrust can be used to assist in manoeuvring		
7.3.8.2	describes how the use of stern-thrust can be used to assist in manoeuvring		
7.3.8.3	describes the use of high-lift rudder systems to improve ship manoeuvrability		
7.3.8.4	describes the use of dynamically positioned vessels and their control systems		
7.3.8.5	describes the use of rudder cycling to reduce head reach in an emergency		
7.3.8.6	compares the effectiveness of rudder cycling with a crash stop		
7.3.8.7	plans manoeuvres using bow and stern thrusters		
7.3.8.8	performs manoeuvres using rudder cycling to control speed and bow and stern thrusters		
7.3.9	Choice of anchorage; anchoring with one or two anchors in limited anchorages and factors involved in determining the length of anchor cable to be used		
7.3.9.1	explains how to choose an anchorage and lists the factors which influence the choice		
7.3.9.2	states that an anchoring plan should be prepared in advance, showing the direction and speed of approach and the dropping position(s), with check bearings		
7.3.9.3	explains how to judge that a ship is stopped ready for letting go		
7.3.9.4	explains that positions should be obtained on letting go and again when brought up		
7.3.9.5	describes the use of anchor buoys		
7.3.9.6	lists the factors to consider in determining the length of anchor cable to be used as: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - the nature of the bottom - the strength of current or wind 		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

<p>7.3.9.7 7.3.9.8</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - the strength and direction of the tidal stream - the exposure of the anchorage to bad weather - the amount of room to swing - the expected length of stay at anchor <p>plans anchorage positions and manoeuvres to anchor the vessel using one and two anchors performs manoeuvres to anchor the vessel using one and two anchors</p>		
<p>7.3.10 7.3.10.1 7.3.10.2 7.3.10.3</p>	<p>Procedures for anchoring in deep water and in shallow water</p> <p>describes holding powers of different anchors describes the preparation of anchors, including walking the anchor back for anchoring in deep water explains that when lowering anchor under power, excessive load on the anchor cable could cause damage or wear of the windlass engine and gearing</p>		
<p>7.3.11 7.3.11.1 7.3.11.2 7.3.11.3 7.3.11.4 7.3.11.5 7.3.11.6 7.3.11.7 7.3.11.8</p>	<p>Dragging anchor; clearing fouled anchors</p> <p>defines dragging and explains how to detect it describes the actions to be taken when the anchor starts to drag explains how excessive yawing may break the anchor out of its holding and describes measures to control yaw describes how to bring a ship to an open moor explains what is meant by ‘foul hawse’ and how it occurs describes how to clear a foul hawse describes how to clear a fouled anchor describes how to buoy and slip an anchor</p>		
<p>7.3.12 7.3.12.1 7.3.12.2 7.3.12.3 7.3.12.4 7.3.12.5 7.3.12.6</p>	<p>Management and handling ships in heavy weather, including assisting a ship or aircraft in distress; towing operations; means of keeping an unmanageable ship out of a sea trough; lessening drift and use of oil</p> <p>states that the use of weather routeing can reduce the number of occasions on which heavy weather is encountered explains that the most common reason for heavy weather damage is lack of proper route planning taking into consideration the 96 hrs, 72 hrs and 48 hrs forecasts during planning describes the precautions to be taken before the onset of heavy weather explains the importance of understanding the enormous stresses encountered by the ship in heavy weather conditions defines wavelength, period, and period of encounter of waves and swell explains that high wave heights are one of the most common reasons for heavy weather damage</p>		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation

No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka

Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

7.3.12.7	describes the methods of observing the frequency of wave beating and the formula with which it can be calculated (for ships less than 250m in length and for ships whose length exceeds 250m)		
7.3.12.8	defines rolling period and synchronous rolling		
7.3.12.9	explains how synchronous rolling can be avoided by an alteration of speed or course to change the period of encounter		
7.3.12.10	describes synchronous pitching and how to prevent it		
7.3.12.11	explains that parametric rolling is caused due to changes in parameters of stability which are: Displacement W (constant), Righting lever GZ (variable), - $W \times GZ = \text{righting moment}$		
7.3.12.12	explains that parametric roll motions with large and dangerous roll amplitudes in waves are due to the variation of stability between the position on the wave crest and the position in the wave trough		
7.3.12.13	explains that among the measures which the vessel can take to avoid parametric rolling and synchronous rolling are ensuring that the vessel has adequate intact stability and that the course and speed of the ship should be selected in a way to avoid conditions for which the encounter period is - close to the ship roll period or - the encounter period is close to one half of the ship roll period -		
7.3.12.14	describes how excessive speed into head seas can cause severe panting and slamming stresses		
7.3.12.15	states that excessive slamming may be almost unnoticed on the bridge of a very large ship		
7.3.12.16	explains that heavy pitching also gives rise to high longitudinal stresses, racing of the propeller and the shipping of water		
7.3.12.17	defines 'pooping' and describes the conditions in which it may occur		
7.3.12.18	defines 'broaching-to' and describes the conditions in which it may occur		
7.3.12.19	explains that a reduction in speed combined with an alteration of course can reduce the danger of broaching-to and of being pooped		
7.3.12.20	describes how to turn a ship in heavy seas		
7.3.12.21	states that a ship may be hove-to with the wind on the bow or on the quarter or stopped		
7.3.12.22	describes the circumstances in which each of the methods above may be used		
7.3.12.23	describes methods of turning a disabled ship's head to keep it out of a sea trough and of lessening lee drift		
7.3.12.24	explains that a ship may drift at an angle to the downwind direction and that its direction of drift will depend upon which side it has the wind		
7.3.12.25	describes how to use oil to reduce breaking seas when hove-to and when manoeuvring in heavy seas		
7.3.12.26	describes actions to prevent a ship being driven on to a lee shore		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

7.3.12.27	describes how to assist a ship or aircraft in distress		
7.3.12.28	describes towing operations		
7.3.13	Precautions in manoeuvring to launch rescue boats and survival craft in bad weather		
7.3.13.1	explains how to make a lee for launching/recovering rescue and survival craft		
7.3.13.2	describes the effect of speed and the effect of flowlines around the vessel		
7.3.13.3	plans manoeuvres to enable launching and recovery of rescue and survival craft		
7.3.13.4	performs manoeuvres to enable launching and recovery of rescue and survival craft		
7.3.14	Methods of taking on board survivors from rescue boats and survival craft		
7.3.14.1	describes the methods of manoeuvring the ship and the precautions needed to take on board survivors from rescue boats and survival craft		
7.3.15	Ability to determine the manoeuvring and propulsion characteristics of common types of ships, with special reference to stopping distances and turning circles at various draughts and speeds		
7.3.15.1	explains the IMO recommendations for ship manoeuvrability, which are: Standards for Ship Manoeuvrability, adopted by resolution MSC.137(76) on 4 December 2002 explanatory Notes to the Standards for Ship Manoeuvrability, adopted by MSC/Circ.1053 on 16 December 2002 provision and Display of Manoeuvring Information on Board Ships, adopted by resolution A.601 (15) on 19 November 1987		
7.3.15.2	states in particular to IMO's recommendation, with respect to the turning ability of the ship, that the advance should not exceed 4.5 ship lengths and the tactical diameter should not exceed 5 ship lengths in the turning circle manoeuvre		
7.3.15.3	states in particular to IMO's recommendation, with respect to the stopping ability of the ship, that the track reach in the full astern stopping test should not exceed 15 ship lengths and also keeping in mind, as guided by the recommendation, that this value may be modified by the Administration where ships of large displacement make this criterion impracticable but in no case exceed 20 ship lengths		
7.3.15.4	states that opportunity should be taken to check and supplement the information in the ship's manoeuvring booklet for intermediate draughts and for various weather conditions		
7.3.15.5	states that turning circles in shallow water at various manoeuvring speeds should be recorded when possible		
7.3.15.6	states that details of an accelerated turn in shallow water should be obtained		
7.3.15.7	explains how trials of stopping ability under various conditions should be recorded		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

7.3.15.8	states that the effect of wind on the behaviour of the ship should be recorded, in particular: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - the drifting behaviour when stopped - the speed at which steerage is lost in various conditions of loading and wind - the behaviour of the ship when making sternway 		
7.3.15.9	states why the minimum operating revolutions of the engine and the resulting speed should be checked		
7.3.15.10	states that any details of manoeuvring behaviour which would be useful to a pilot or future Master should be recorded		
7.3.15.11	states that STCW Code section B-V/a recommends additional training for Masters and Chief Mates of large ships and ships with unusual manoeuvring characteristics		
7.3.16	Importance of navigating at reduced speed to avoid damage caused by own ship's bow and stern waves		
7.3.16.1	explains damage to shore due to excessive bow waves and stern waves		
7.3.16.2	explains the effects of passing ships on ships moored alongside		
7.3.16.3	states the precautions that should be taken by ships alongside to minimize the effect of passing traffic		
7.4	Assess reported defects & damage to spaces, hatch covers & ballast tanks & take appropriate action		
7.4.1	Limitations on strength of the vital constructional parts of a standard bulk carrier and interpret given figures for bending moments and shear forces		
7.4.1.1	states that the longitudinally continuous upper deck of a bulk carrier suffers hull girder stress		
7.4.1.2	explains that the longitudinal bending causes an axial force on the upper deck that may cause cracking of the deck plate at the locations where the stress is concentrated		
7.4.1.3	states that bulk carriers have cargo hatchways for the convenience of cargo handling facilities		
7.4.1.4	explains that these hatchways reduce the ship's torsional strength and invite concentrated stress at the hatchway corners which may be evident by cracking of the deck plates in these areas		
7.4.1.5	states in this regard upper deck plating at hatchway corners is one of the focal points for cracking		
7.4.1.6	explains that cross-deck strips come under stress by transverse bending		
7.4.1.7	explains that the transverse bulkheads provide transverse strength to a bulk carrier and the cross-deck strips provide the strength to withstand the resultant axial forces in a transverse direction		
7.4.1.8	explains that there are various types of cracking in the upper deck		
7.4.1.9	states that those propagating from the cargo hatchways are generally considered serious to the ship's safety		
7.4.1.10	explains that various metal fittings are welded to the upper deck plating and these installations may cause stress		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

7.4.1.11	concentrations at the welded joints or have defects in the welds states that deck platings in the vicinity of manholes, hatchside coaming end brackets, bulwark stays, crane post foundations and deck houses, etc. are to be carefully watched for cracking		
7.4.1.12	states that hatch coamings are subjected to hull girder stress		
7.4.1.13	explains that although they are not critical longitudinal strength members, they should be watched carefully to ensure that these cracks do not spread states that the area around the corners of a main cargo hatch can be subjected to high cyclical stress due to the combined effect of hull girder bending moments, transverse and torsional loading		
7.4.1.14	explains that discontinuous cargo hatch side coamings can be subjected to significant longitudinal bending stress		
7.4.1.15	explains that this introduces additional stresses at the mid-length of hatches and stress concentrations at the termination of the side coaming extensions		
7.4.1.16	explains that hatch cover operations, in combination with poor maintenance, can result in damage to cleats and gasket, leading to the loss of weathertight integrity of the hold spaces		
7.4.1.17	states that damage to hatch covers can also be sustained by mishandling and overloading of deck cargoes		
7.4.1.18	states that the marine environment, the humid atmosphere due to the water vapour from the cargo in cargo holds, and the high temperature on deck and hatch cover plating due to heating from the sun may result in accelerated corrosion of plating and stiffeners making the structure more vulnerable to the exposures described above		
7.4.1.19	states that when carrying out visual inspection, special attention should be paid to areas where pipes, e.g. fire main pipes, hydraulic pipes and pipes for compressed air, are fitted close to the plating, making proper maintenance of the protective coating difficult to carry out		
7.4.1.20	states that cracking may be initiated at defects in welded joints and metal fittings to the coamings that will invite stress concentration		
7.4.1.21	states that such cracking is considered serious to the ship's safety because it may be the initiation of a fracture on a large scale		
7.4.1.22	states that on typical bulk carriers, the topside and bilge hopper tanks compose a double hull surrounding the cargo space, which together with the double bottom provides hull strength and rigidity		
7.4.1.23	states that if corrosion and waste become excessive, failure of hold frames invites additional loads to the adjacent ones, which may lead to failure throughout the side shell structure		
7.4.1.24	explains that the transverse bulkheads may also be susceptible to accelerated corrosion, particularly at the mid height and at the bottom		
7.4.1.25	states that particular care should be exercised when inspecting hold frames		
7.4.1.26	states that the transverse bulkheads, in that these members may appear in deceptively good condition		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation

No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka

Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

7.4.1.27	states that the tank top and side shell plating generally corrodes from the steel surface facing the cargo hold, and corrosion from inside the double bottom is usually less than that from the cargo hold side		
7.4.1.28	states that cargo hold frames should also be carefully inspected for mechanical damage, corrosion and waste, because many cargoes will damage hold frames through direct contact		
7.4.1.29	states that this damage will invite corrosion from seawater brought on board in loading operations		
7.4.1.30	states that the most important aspects of cargo hold inspections are the condition of side shell structures and their reinforcements		
7.4.1.31	states that special attention should be paid to the condition of hold frames and their connection to the shell plating outlines and describes the common damage/defects that may occur on watertight transverse bulkheads situated at the ends of dry cargo holds of a bulk carrier		
7.4.1.32	states that cracks may often be found at or near the connection of the stool of the transverse bulkhead and the tanktop in bulk carriers having combination cargo/ballast holds		
7.4.1.33	states that wastage/corrosion may affect the integrity of steel hatch covers and the associated moving parts, e.g. cleats, pot-lifts, roller wheels, etc.		
7.4.1.34	explains that deformation/twisting of exposed structure above deck, such as side-coaming brackets and bulwarks, may result from impact due to improper handling of cargo and cargo handling machinery		
7.4.1.35	explains that such damages may also be caused by shipping of green sea water on deck in heavy weather		
7.4.1.36	outlines and describes other fractures that may occur in the deck plating at hatches and in connected coamings		
7.4.1.37	outlines and describes the damages caused by cargoes in cargo holds, especially to tank top plating and side: <ul style="list-style-type: none">- at loading and unloading ports for coal or iron ore, large grab buckets, high-capacity cargo- loaders, bulldozers and pneumatic hammers may be employed for cargo handling operations- large grab buckets may cause considerable damage to tank top plating when being dropped to grab cargo- use of bulldozers and pneumatic hammers may also be harmful to cargo hold structures and may result in damage to tank tops, bilge hoppers, hold frames and end brackets- lumber cargoes may also cause damage to the cargo hold structures of smaller bulkers that are employed in the carriage of light bulk cargoes and lumbers		
7.4.1.38	states that side stringers and/or side shells in way of No. 1 cargo hold along the collision bulkhead are often found cracked		
7.4.1.39	explains that this kind of damage is considered to be caused by insufficient continuity between forepeak construction and cargo hold structure		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

7.4.1.40	explains that on large bulk carriers such as capsizes and panamax bulkers, bilge hopper plating around the knuckle line may be cracked along the bilge hopper transverse webs		
7.4.1.41	states that this is considered to be caused by insufficient local reinforcement		
7.4.1.42	states that though the water ballast tanks of newer bulk carriers are well protected against corrosion, the upper portion is susceptible to corrosion because the protective coating will easily deteriorate due to heat from the upper deck and the cyclic wet/dry effect of seawater		
7.4.1.43	states that cracks may be found at the intersections of longitudinal and transverse members		
7.4.1.44	states that cracks may be found in the side, bottom and/or tank top longitudinal at intersections with solid floors or bilge hopper transverses		
7.4.1.45	states that cracks also may be found in the floors or transverses occurring at the corners of the slots cut for longitudinal		
7.4.1.46	states that longitudinal may be cracked at the ends of additional (partial) side girders provided in the double bottom below cargo hold bulkheads or at the side walls of bilge wells for cargo holds, due to additional stress concentration caused by the structural discontinuity at those connections		
7.4.1.47	states that cracks may be observed in transverse webs in bilge hoppers initiating from the slot openings for longitudinal and at the knuckled corners of the lower ends of the hoppers		
7.4.1.48	states that corrosion accelerated by heat has been observed in double-bottom water ballast tanks adjacent to fuel oil tanks		
7.4.1.49	states that in recent years, the grade of bunker oil being used requires the temperature in the tank to be 80°C or more and such a temperature can accelerate corrosion of the steel in the tanks, particularly in the vicinity of the boundaries of the fuel oil tanks		
7.4.1.50	states that bottom plates are often eroded under the suction bellmouths in tank		
7.4.1.51	states that a sounding pipe has a pad plate at its bottom end for protection of the tank bottom against the strike of the sounding scale's lead and extent of diminution of the protection plate should be examined during inspections		
7.4.1.52	states that connection trunks provided between topside and bilge hopper spaces are to be carefully watched for signs of corrosion and waste of the steelworks inside		
7.4.1.53	explains that on some bulk carriers, bilge hopper tanks and topside tanks form one integral tank connected with trunk spaces		
7.4.1.54	states that the inside surface of a connection trunk is liable to corrosion and should be examined carefully		
7.4.2	Methods to avoid the detrimental effects on bulk carriers of corrosion, fatigue and inadequate cargo handling		2.2.2
7.4.2.1	states that deterioration of structure through corrosion, fatigue and damage is identified as a principal factor in the loss		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation

No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka

Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

	of many bulk carriers		
7.4.2.2	states that failing to identify such deterioration may lead to sudden and unexpected failure		
7.4.2.3	states that it is critical to inspect the cargo holds, ballast tanks and vital constructional parts of the bulk carriers, after every operation to ensure rapid action can be taken if the inspection reveals any cracks, fracture or other damages		
7.4.2.4	states that internal degradation through corrosion may be accelerated through chemical action from certain cargoes		
7.4.2.5	states that certain cargoes, including coal, phosphates and sulphur, transported by bulk carriers can rapidly corrode the hold side frames and promote fractures		
7.4.2.6	states that the scouring effect of abrasive cargoes may cause hold coatings to deteriorate rapidly		
7.4.2.7	explains that corrosive effects of some cargoes like coal which produces acidic conditions, accelerates the rate of deterioration of internal structures in cargo holds and welds in particular		
7.4.2.8	explains that since bulk carriers tend to have low freeboard the uppermost continuous deck and other fittings including hatch covers are prone to exposure to green seas, which may again cause accelerated corrosion, and in some cases even structural damages which may again lead to catastrophic result, if not detected early and appropriate action taken		
7.4.2.9	states that since improper cleaning during hold cleaning leads to accelerated corrosion all crew should be well trained for hold cleaning, and proper checks to be made after the holds have been cleaned, to ensure no remnants of previous cargo is left behind		
7.4.2.10	states that in ballast holds, sloshing forces due to partially filled spaces during ballast exchange at sea may result in damage to the structure and this damage may go unnoticed if it is in inaccessible positions; this has to be borne in mind while carrying out inspections		
7.4.2.11	states that coatings are the first barriers to protect metal surfaces against corrosion		
7.4.2.12	states that ballast exchange, especially for cargo hold, can also cause accelerated corrosion, if the hold has any exposed, unprotected steel surface		
7.4.2.13	states that intact coatings prevent corrosion of the steel surface, however a local absence of coating (due to coating depletion, deterioration, damage, etc.) can result in corrosion rates similar or greater than those of unprotected steel states that periodic inspections at appropriate intervals and repair of coating as required are effective in minimizing corrosion damage		
7.4.2.14	states that to ensure that such exposures are not neglected, all officers should be well trained in identifying and reporting to the chief officer or the Master		
7.4.2.15	states that care should be taken to tend any unprotected surfaces in cargo holds caused due to any reasons, after carefully examining the structure for any signs of fatigue or fracture		
7.4.2.16	states that hold cleaning, ballasting at sea and ballast exchange carried out at sea are vulnerable aspects of a bulk carrier operation, and thus to avoid any kind of undue stress, proper, careful procedures, specified in loading manual,		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation

No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka

Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

7.4.2.17	ballast water management plan, among others should be followed explains that bulkheads, trunks and ballast tank boundaries in single side-skin bulk carriers can present “hard spots” that concentrate forces where the change in construction occurs (e.g. longitudinal to transverse framing) that may lead to undetected fractures, hence careful examination at periodic intervals is necessary		
7.4.2.18	states that damage to bow plating is possible through impacts associated with swinging or loosely stowed anchors and may cause an initiating fracture or fatigue in bow shell plating that could lead to failure and subsequent flooding		
7.4.2.19	states that internal integrity of forward spaces (that are usually used for ballast and/or stores) is therefore of vital importance		
7.4.2.20	states that to prevent this from happening, the anchor must be fully hauled-in, stowed and retained in position by the lashing arrangement provided, ensuring there is three-point contact of anchor with the ship side at all given times		
7.4.2.21	states that corrosion degradation will seriously reduce the ability of plating and stiffening to withstand the forces to which it will be subjected		
7.4.2.22	states that any external forces - horizontal and/or vertical - may cause hatch cover dislodgement		
7.4.2.23	states that the cargo hatchway, if it loses its protection in this way, is a major access for water ingress and a serious threat to the integrity of the hull		
7.4.2.24	states that to ensure such thing does not happen, the hatch covers must be stowed, secured, battened down at all given times		
7.4.2.25	states that metal fatigue is the progressive failure of metal under cyclic loading and as the name “fatigue” implies, it is a mode of degradation in which the steel is worked until it simply gets tired		
7.4.2.26	states that bulk carriers are susceptible to many modes of cyclic forces that combine with other forces acting upon the vessel’s structure and over time these cyclic stresses can seriously weaken the vessel’s structural capacity		
7.4.2.27	states that fatigue failure may result due to loss of cross-sectional area in the plating joints		
7.4.2.28	states the areas that are prone to fatigue cracks in the cargo holds, which have to be carefully examined during routine, periodic, scheduled inspections, are: <ul style="list-style-type: none">- corrugated bulkhead- shedder plate- inner bottom longitudinal (tank top)- side frames- side longitudinals- hopper tank- lower stool- toes of the hatch coaming termination brackets		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

7.4.2.29	states that carriage of high density cargoes can cause buckling, structural deformities over a period of years, which can result in acceleration of corrosion and fatigue		
7.4.2.30	states that many terminals have the practice of dislodging cargo from side shell, frames, hoppers using mechanical grabs, bulldozers, hydraulic hammers, and other machineries		
7.4.2.31	states that these machineries produce local damage and loading that can weaken the ship's structure		
7.4.2.32	states that precaution must be taken to ensure the terminals are instructed not to use any machinery which may cause damage, clearly, during the formal filling and agreeing as per the ship/shore checklist, contained in the BLU Code, and duty officers to be instructed to stop any such activities that may endanger the ship's structure, also bringing it to the notice of Master		
7.4.2.33	states that buckling of plating caused due to high density cargoes, found generally on cargo hold tank tops, can lead to fractures or accelerated corrosion, if not inspected thoroughly		
7.4.2.34	states that damage to side shell caused externally through contact with docksides or tugs and internally from impact by cargo dislodging equipment during discharge can result in initiating fractures and/or fatigue of the structure		
7.4.2.35	states that careful examination is of prime importance after any such incidents, to assess the extent of damage and action required.		
7.5	Maintain safety & security of the ship's crew & passengers & the operational condition of life saving fire fighting & other safety systems		
7.5.1	Life saving appliance regulations (SOLAS)		
7.5.1.1	demonstrates a thorough knowledge of the regulations concerning life-saving appliances and arrangements (SOLAS), including the LSA Code		
7.5.2	Organization of fire and abandon ship drills		
7.5.2.1	prepares schedules for the conduct of fire and abandon ship drills so that all required drills and equipment are covered within required timeframes		
7.5.2.2	discusses ways in which crew can be motivated to participate fully in drills		
7.5.2.3	prepares plans for effective drills		
7.5.2.4	organizes effective drills including the briefing, conduct and debriefing of the drill		
7.5.2.5	discusses the process for ensuring that required changes are made to the safety management system and on board procedures as a result of the lessons learnt from drills		
7.5.3	Maintenance of operational condition of life-saving, firefighting and other safety systems		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

<p>7.5.3.1</p> <p>7.5.3.2</p> <p>7.5.3.3</p> <p>7.5.3.4</p> <p>7.5.3.5</p> <p>7.5.3.6</p> <p>7.5.3.7</p> <p>7.5.3.8</p>	<p>discusses the use and upkeep of the SOLAS training manual in terms of the safety equipment provided and the required maintenance of this equipment</p> <p>prepares procedures and checklists for the inspection of life-saving, firefighting and other safety systems on board</p> <p>ensures that regular inspections of life-saving, firefighting and other safety systems on board are undertaken and that any deficiencies are identified and rectified</p> <p>prepare procedures and schedules for the maintenance of life saving, firefighting and other safety systems on board</p> <p>prepares schedules for the required survey of life-saving, firefighting and other safety systems on board</p> <p>prepares for and supports the survey of life-saving, firefighting and other safety systems on board</p> <p>prepares procedures and checklists for the inspection of watertight doors, side scuttles, cross flooding arrangements, valves and other closing mechanisms</p> <p>prepares maintenance plans and procedures for watertight doors, side scuttles, cross flooding arrangements, valves and other closing mechanisms</p>		
<p>7.5.4</p> <p>7.5.4.1</p> <p>7.5.4.2</p> <p>7.5.4.3</p> <p>7.5.4.4</p> <p>7.5.4.5</p>	<p>Actions to protect and safeguard all persons on board in emergencies</p> <p>states that some crew members will be assigned specific duties for mustering and control of passengers</p> <p>lists those duties as:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - warning the passengers - ensuring that all passenger spaces are evacuated - guiding passengers to muster stations - maintaining discipline in passageways, stairs and doorways - checking that passengers are suitably clothed and that life jackets are correctly donned - taking a roll-call of passengers - instructing passengers on procedure for boarding survival craft or jumping into the sea - directing passengers to embarkation stations - instructing passengers during drills - ensuring that a supply of blankets is taken to the survival craft <p>Rescue of persons from a vessel in distress or from a wreck</p> <p>states why it is preferable to wait for daylight when no immediate danger exists</p> <p>states that communications should be established between the ships and the method of rescue agreed upon when time</p>		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

<p>7.5.4.6</p> <p>7.5.4.7</p> <p>7.5.4.8</p> <p>7.5.4.9</p> <p>7.5.4.10</p> <p>7.5.4.11</p> <p>7.5.4.12</p> <p>7.5.4.13</p> <p>7.5.4.14</p> <p>7.5.4.15</p> <p>7.5.4.16</p> <p>7.5.4.17</p>	<p>permits</p> <p>states that rescue boats or motor-lifeboats would be used if conditions permitted</p> <p>states that unnecessary equipment should be removed from the boats and replaced by lifejackets, life buoys, blankets and a portable VHF radio</p> <p>states that the rescue vessel should reconnoitre the area to see if there is any wreckage which could be a danger to boats</p> <p>describes how both ships can spread oil in rough weather</p> <p>describes the preparations for taking survivors on board from the boats</p> <p>describes how to provide a lee and launch boats</p> <p>describes how boats should approach the wreck and pick up survivors</p> <p>describes the recovery of boats and survivors</p> <p>describes the methods of rescue which may be used when sea conditions are too dangerous to use boats</p> <p>Man-overboard procedure</p> <p>describes methods of recovering a person from the sea when heavy weather prevents the use of the normal manoeuvres and boats</p> <p>describes and explains the actions to take when a person is reported missing at sea</p>		
<p>7.5.5</p> <p>7.5.5.1</p> <p>7.5.5.2</p> <p>7.5.5.3</p> <p>7.5.5.4</p> <p>7.5.5.5</p> <p>7.5.5.6</p> <p>7.5.5.7</p> <p>7.5.5.8</p>	<p>Actions to limit damage and save the ship following a fire, explosion, collision or grounding</p> <p>Means of limiting damage and salvaging the ship following a fire or explosion</p> <p>describes the use and limitations of standard procedures and prepared contingency plans in emergency situations</p> <p>describes methods of fighting fires (see IMO model course 2.03, Advanced training in fire fighting)</p> <p>states that cooling of compartment boundaries where fire has occurred should be continued until ambient temperature is approached</p> <p>explains the dangers of accumulated water from firefighting and describes how to deal with it</p> <p>states that watch for re-ignition should be maintained until the area is cold</p> <p>describes the precautions to take before entry to a compartment where a fire has been extinguished</p> <p>describes the inspection for damage</p> <p>describes measures which may be taken to plug holes, shore-up damaged or stressed structure, blank broken piping, make safe damaged electrical cables and limit ingress of water through a damaged deck or superstructure</p>		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

<p>7.5.5.9 7.5.5.10 7.5.5.11</p>	<p>outlines the measures to be taken when the inert-gas main and gas lines to a mast riser are fractured states that continuous watch should be kept on the damaged area and temporary repairs states that course and speed should be adjusted to minimize stresses and the shipping of water</p> <p>Procedure for abandoning ship</p> <p>7.5.5.12 states that a ship should only be abandoned when imminent danger of sinking, breaking up, fire or explosion exists or other circumstances make remaining on board impossible 7.5.5.13 states that a distress call should be transmitted by all available means until acknowledged 7.5.5.14 lists the information to include in the distress message 7.5.5.15 describes other distress signals which may be used to attract attention 7.5.5.16 describes the launching of boats and liferafts when the ship is listing heavily 7.5.5.17 describes the launching of boats and liferafts in heavy weather conditions 7.5.5.18 describes the use of oil to calm the sea surface and explains why fuel oil is not suitable</p>		
<p>7.6</p>	<p>Develop emergency and damage control plans and handle emergency situations</p>		
<p>7.6.1 7.6.1.1 7.6.1.2 7.6.1.3 7.6.1.4</p>	<p>Preparation of contingency plans for response to emergencies</p> <p>draws up a muster list and emergency instructions for a given crew and type of ship assigns duties for the operation of remote controls such as:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - main engine stop - ventilation stops - lubricating and fuel oil transfer pump stops - dump valves - CO₂ discharge - watertight doors - and for the operation of essential services such as: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> •emergency generator and switchboard •emergency fire and bilge pumps <p>describes options for the division of the crew, e.g., into a command team, an emergency team, a back-up emergency team and an engine-room emergency team explains the composition of the emergency teams in the above objective</p>		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

7.6.1.5	states that crew members not assigned to emergency teams would prepare survival craft, render first aid, assemble passengers and generally assist the emergency parties as directed		
	- designates muster positions for the command team, both at sea and in port		
	- designates muster positions for the emergency teams		
7.6.1.6	states that the engine-room emergency team would take control of engine-room emergencies and keep the command team informed		
7.6.1.7	states that good communications between the command team and the emergency teams are essential		
7.6.1.8	prepares contingency plans to deal with: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - fire and/or explosion in specific areas, such as galley, accommodation, container stows on or under deck, engine-room or cargo space, including coordination with shore facilities in port, taking account of the ship's fire-control plan - rescue of victims from an enclosed space - water ingress into the ship - serious shift of cargo - piracy attack - being towed by another ship or tug - heavy-weather damage, with particular reference to hatches, ventilators and the security of deck cargo - rescue of survivors from another ship or from the sea - leakages and spills of dangerous cargo stranding - abandoning ship 		
7.6.1.9	explains how drills and practices should be organized		
7.6.1.10	describes the role of a shipboard safety committee in contingency planning		
7.6.1.11	Actions to be taken when emergencies arise in port		
	-		
7.6.1.12	describes actions to take in the event of fire on own ship, with particular reference to cooperation and communication with shore facilities		
7.6.1.13	describes action which should be taken when fire occurs on a nearby ship or an adjacent port facility		
7.6.1.14	describes the circumstances in which a ship should put to sea for reasons of safety		
7.6.1.15	describes the actions to be taken when own ship is dragging anchor towards dangers in port		
7.6.1.16	describes the actions which can be taken to avoid a ship dragging anchor towards own ship in an anchorage		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

7.6.1.16	describes the actions and precautions to take when a submarine cable is lifted by the anchor		
7.6.1.18	describes how to buoy and slip an anchor		
7.6.1.19	describes how an anchor may be recovered when no power is available at the windlass		
7.6.2	Ship construction, including damage control		
7.6.2.1	Flooding of compartments		
7.6.2.1.1	defines: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - margin line - permeability of a space 		
7.6.2.1.2	explains what is meant by ‘floodable length’		
7.6.2.1.3	explains what is meant by ‘permissible length of compartments’ in passenger ships		
7.6.2.1.4	describes briefly the significance of the factor of subdivision		
7.6.2.1.5	states the assumed extent of damage used in assessing the stability of passenger ships in damaged condition		
7.6.2.1.6	summarizes, with reference to the factor of subdivision, the extent of damage which a passenger ship should withstand		
7.6.2.1.7	describes the provisions for dealing with asymmetrical flooding		
7.6.2.1.8	states the final conditions of the ship after assumed damage and, where applicable, equalization of flooding		
7.6.2.1.9	states that the Master is supplied with data necessary to maintain sufficient intact stability to withstand the critical damage		
7.6.2.1.10	explains the possible effects of sustaining damage when in a less favourable condition		
7.6.2.1.11	distinguishes between ships of Type ‘A’ and Type ‘B’ for the purposes of computation of freeboard		
7.6.2.1.12	describes the extent of damage which a Type ‘A’ ship of over 150 metres length should withstand		
7.6.2.1.13	explains that a Type ‘A’ ship of over 150 metres length is described as a ‘one-compartment ship’		
7.6.2.1.14	describes the requirements for survivability of Type ‘B’ ships with reduced freeboard assigned		
7.6.2.1.15	summarizes the equilibrium conditions regarded as satisfactory after flooding		
7.6.2.1.16	states that damage to compartments may cause a ship to sink as a result of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - insufficient reserve buoyancy, leading to progressive flooding - progressive flooding due to excessive list or trim - capsizing due to loss of stability structural failure 		
7.6.3	Methods and aids for fire-prevention, detection and extinction		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

	<i>Advanced fire fighting</i>		
7.6.4	Functions and use of life-saving appliances		
	<i>Proficiency in survival craft and rescue boats (other than fast rescue boats)</i>		
7.7	Organize and Manage the Provision Of Medical Care on Board		
7.7.1	Use and content of the following publications:		
7.7.1.1	International Medical Guide for Ships		
7.7.1.1.1	describes the content and application of the above publication extracts and applies information for given situations		
7.7.1.1.2			
7.7.1.2	International Code of Signals (Medical Section)		
7.7.1.2.1	describes the content and application of the above publication		
7.7.1.2.2	constructs and interprets messages		
7.7.1.3	Medical First Aid Guide for Use in Accidents Involving Dangerous Goods		
7.7.1.3.1	describes the content and application of the above publication		
7.7.1.3.2	extracts and applies information for given situations		
8.0	New amendments		

08. Ship Board Operations (Total number of hours - 126)



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

Ref. No	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Duration	Course Notes ref. no
8.1	Manoeuvre and handle a ship in all conditions		
8.1.1	Dry-docking, both with and without damage		
8.1.1.1	Dry docking		
8.1.1.1.1	lists the information required by the dry-dock authorities as: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - length, beam and rise of floor, if any - draughts and trim - position of bilge keels and appendages such as a bulbous bow - whether single or twin screw - the weight and disposition of any cargo on board - position of any hull damage for inspection or repair 		
8.1.1.1.2	states that a plan showing the position of bulkheads, main structural members and drain plugs is required for the preparation of beds and shores when dry docking in the loaded condition		
8.1.1.1.3	explains why a slight trim by the stern is the ideal condition for dry-docking		
8.1.1.1.4	explains the need for adequate statical stability and states when the most critical condition occurs		
8.1.1.1.5	plans the distribution of deadweight items to ensure adequate statical stability during docking		
8.1.1.1.6	describes the use of bilge blocks, breast shores and bilge shores and their placement during pumping out		
8.1.1.1.7	states that all tanks should be sounded and the readings recorded when the ship takes the keel blocks		
8.1.1.1.8	explains why, as far as possible, tanks should be full or empty		
8.1.1.1.9	explains that tanks and movable weights should be restored to their original condition before flooding the dock to ensure the same trim and zero list on refloating		
8.1.1.1.10	explains why a ship may be left partially waterborne if damage is accessible		
8.1.1.1.11	explains how an adequate supply of water for fire fighting and a telephone for calling emergency services should be arranged		
8.1.1.1.12	lists the precautions to be taken and the preparations to be made before flooding the dock		
8.2	Plan and ensure safe loading, stowage, securing, care during the voyage and unloading of cargoes		
8.2.1	Knowledge of and ability to apply relevant international regulations, codes and standards concerning the safe handling, stowage, securing and transport of cargoes		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

8.2.1.1	Plans and actions conform with international regulations		
8.2.1.1.1	plans loading to comply with the Load Line Convention in terms of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - freeboard - seasonal restrictions - zones - statical and dynamic stability requirements - bunker requirements, and considers - expected weather patterns 		
8.2.1.1.2	plans loading to comply with the IMO Intact Stability Code		
8.2.1.1.3	plans cargo stowage and carriage in compliance with the Code of Safe Practice for Cargo Stowage and Securing		
8.2.1.1.4	states that an approved cargo securing manual is required to be carried on board all ships except those engaged solely in the carriage of bulk cargoes		
8.2.1.1.5	lists the information provided in the cargo securing manual		
8.2.1.1.6	uses data from the cargo securing manual to plan securing a range of cargo types		
8.2.1.1.7	lists the certificates required for inspection by port state control officers		
8.2.1.1.8	plans loading and securing to comply with the Code of Practice for the Carriage of Timber Deck Cargoes		
8.2.2	Use of stability and trim diagrams and stress-calculating equipment, including automatic data-based (ADB) equipment, and knowledge of loading cargoes and ballasting in order to keep hull stress within acceptable limits		
8.2.2.1	Knowledge of loading cargoes and ballasting in order to keep hull stress within acceptable limits		
8.2.2.1.1	explains the importance of devising a cargo stowage plan and loading/unloading plan		
8.2.2.1.2	states that the officer in charge should always refer to the loading manual to ascertain an appropriate cargo load distribution, satisfying the imposed limits on structural loading		
8.2.2.1.3	explains the stages of development of a safe cargo loading or unloading plan		
8.2.2.1.4	explains that in any event if the cargo needs to be distributed differently from that described in the loading manual, calculations must always be made to		
8.2.2.1.5	determine, for any part of the voyage, that still water shear force (SWSF), still water bending moments (SWBM) and local loading limits are not exceeded		
8.2.2.1.6	explains the reason to keep the hull stress levels below the permissible limits by the greatest possible margin		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

<p>8.2.2.1.7</p> <p>8.2.2.1.8</p> <p>8.2.2.1.9</p>	<p>explains that when making a plan for cargo operations, the officer in charge must consider the ballasting operation, to ensure:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - correct synchronization is maintained with the cargo operations - that the de-ballasting/ballasting rate is specially considered against the loading rate and the imposed structural and operational limits - that ballasting and de-ballasting of each pair of symmetrical port and starboard tanks is carried out simultaneously <p>explains the importance to know the exact pumping rates achieved on board their ship to ascertain and ensure the plans are devised and modified accordingly</p> <p>plans loading/de-ballasting operations within acceptable stress parameters</p> <p>plans discharging/ballasting operations within acceptable stress parameters</p>		
<p>8.2.3</p> <p>8.2.3.1</p> <p>8.2.3.1.1</p> <p>8.2.3.1.2</p> <p>8.2.3.1.3</p> <p>8.2.3.1.4</p> <p>8.2.3.1.5</p> <p>8.2.3.1.6</p> <p>8.2.3.1.7</p> <p>8.2.3.1.8</p> <p>8.2.3.1.9</p> <p>8.2.3.1.10</p> <p>8.2.3.1.11</p>	<p>Stowage and securing of cargoes on board ships, including cargo-handling gear and securing and lashing equipment</p> <p>Timber deck cargoes</p> <p>outlines the contents of the Code of Safe Practice for Ships Carrying Timber Deck Cargoes with respect to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - stowage of sawn timber, logs, cants and wood pulp - fitting of uprights - lashings and the arrangements for tightening them, including the use of a wiggle wire <p>states that vibration and movement of the ship in a seaway compacts the stow and slackens the lashings</p> <p>states that lashings should be inspected regularly and tightened as necessary</p> <p>states that inspections of lashings should be entered in the log book</p> <p>explains the dangers of heavy seas breaking aboard and how to minimize that risk</p> <p>states the action to take if cargo is lost overboard or jettisoned</p> <p>states the maximum height of cargo permitted on deck in a seasonal winter zone in winter</p> <p>describes the controlling factors for height of cargo at other times</p> <p>describes the requirements for fencing, for provision of walk-ways and for access to the top of the cargo</p> <p>describes the requirements when loading to timber load lines</p> <p>lists the stability information that should be available to the Master</p>		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

8.2.3.1.12	explains when the worst stability conditions during a voyage are likely to occur		
8.2.3.1.13	describes the rolling period test for the approximate determination of a ship's stability and the limitations of the method		
8.2.3.1.14	explains the actions to take in the event of the ship developing an angle of loll		
8.2.3.1.15	plans the loading and securing of a timber deck cargo		
8.2.3.2	Care of cargo during carriage		
8.2.3.2.1	plans the loading and stowage of a hold or holds using a cargo list and reference books to take into account the carriage requirements of the various cargoes		
8.2.3.2.2	describes the precautions to avoid crushing and chafing damage and states which cargoes are most liable to be affected		
8.2.3.2.3	explains how cargo may be damaged by residues of previous cargo, dirty dunnage or leaking fuel oil tanks		
8.2.3.2.4	describes how cargo can be damaged by dust and the precautions to take when carrying commodities giving rise to dust		
8.2.3.2.5	states which cargoes are particularly liable to damage by ship or cargo sweat and explains how to minimize the risk of sweat damage		
8.2.3.2.6	explains that any goods containing liquids are liable to leak and describes the stowage required to prevent any leakage damaging other goods		
8.2.3.2.7	states that many goods can be spoiled by extremes of temperature		
8.2.3.2.8	explains that overheating may occur in cargo stowed against engine-room bulkheads, heated double-bottom tanks and deep tanks carrying heated cargoes		
8.2.3.2.9	states that high temperatures also occur on the underside of steel decks exposed to tropical sunshine		
8.2.3.2.10	describes how to protect cargoes which must be kept from freezing		
8.2.3.2.11	describes the measures to take to prevent pilferage of cargo during loading, discharging and carriage		
8.2.3.2.12	describes the damage to cargo which can result from the use of fork-lift trucks and similar machinery in cargo spaces and methods of preventing it		
8.2.3.3	Requirements applicable to cargo handling gear		
8.2.3.3.1	outlines the requirements of ILO Convention 152, the Occupational Safety and Health (Dock Work) Convention, 1979, which apply to ships defines the terms: - competent person		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

<p>8.2.3.3.3</p> <p>8.2.3.3.4</p> <p>8.2.3.3.5</p> <p>8.2.3.3.6</p> <p>8.2.3.3.7</p> <p>8.2.3.3.8</p> <p>8.2.3.3.9</p> <p>8.2.3.3.10</p> <p>8.2.3.3.11</p> <p>8.2.3.3.12</p> <p>8.2.3.3.13</p> <p>8.2.3.3.14</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - responsible person - authorized person - lifting appliance loose gear <p>states that national laws or regulations should prescribe measures to cover, amongst others:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - safe means of access to ships, holds, staging, equipment and lifting appliances - opening and closing of hatches, protection of hatchways and work in holds - construction, maintenance and use of lifting and other cargo handling appliances - rigging and use of ship's derricks - testing, examination, inspection and certification, as appropriate, of lifting appliances, of loose gear (including chains and ropes) and of slings and other lifting devices which form an integral part of the load - marking of cargo gear - handling different types of cargo - dangerous substances and other hazards in the working environment <p>describes the requirements for guarding dangerous parts of machinery</p> <p>states that machinery includes mechanized hatch covers and lifting appliances</p> <p>states the requirements for the marking of beams and portable hatch covers</p> <p>states that only an authorized person, preferably a member of the ship's crew, should be permitted to open or close power-operated hatch covers and equipment such as doors in hull, ramps and car decks</p> <p>describes the requirements for fencing of openings</p> <p>describes the requirements for the testing of lifting appliances and loose gear before they are used for the first time</p> <p>describes the requirements for periodic thorough examination and inspection of lifting appliances and loose gear</p> <p>explains what is meant by a thorough examination</p> <p>describes the records and certificates which should be kept in respect of tests, thorough examinations and inspections of lifting appliances and loose gear</p> <p>describes the marking of safe working loads required on lifting appliances and loose gear</p> <p>states that every ship must have a rigging plan and relevant information necessary for the safe rigging of derricks, cranes and accessory gear</p>		
<p>8.2.3.4</p> <p>8.2.3.4.1</p> <p>8.2.3.4.2</p>	<p>Maintenance of cargo gear</p> <p>prepares plans for the inspection of cargo gear</p> <p>undertakes inspections of cargo gear so that any safety issues associated with machinery, structure, running and standing rigging and associated equipment is identified and addressed before use</p>		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

8.2.3.4.3	maintains the records and plans required for the cargo gear		
8.2.3.4.4	develops maintenance plans and procedures for the maintenance of machinery, structure, running and standing rigging and associated equipment of cargo gear, including blocks, shackles, wire and fibre ropes		
8.2.3.4.5	provides instruction to crew and manages the maintenance of cargo gear		
8.2.3.4.6	states the requirements for the annealing of wrought iron loose gear		
8.2.3.4.7	describes the precautions to be taken when working aloft for the overhaul of cargo gear		
8.2.3.5	Maintenance of hatch covers		
8.2.3.5.1	states that track ways should be cleaned of loose material before closing hatches		
8.2.3.5.2	states that the tension of draw chains should be adjusted as required		
8.2.3.5.3	states that wheels, gears, racks and pinions and other moving parts should be kept lubricated		
8.2.3.5.4	states that side cleats and cross-joint wedge mechanisms should be kept greased		
8.2.3.5.5	explains that hydraulic systems should be checked for leakage, especially in tween-decks where leaked fluid may damage cargo		
8.2.3.5.6	states that drainage channels should be cleaned out and drainage holes checked on weather-deck hatches		
8.2.3.5.7	describes how to check that compression bars are making complete contact with sealing gaskets		
8.2.3.5.8	explains that weather tightness may be checked by hose-testing the covers before loading		
8.2.3.5.9	prepares plans and procedures for the inspection and maintenance of hatch covers		
8.2.4	Loading and unloading operations, with special regard to the transport of cargoes identified in the Code of Safe Practice for Cargo Stowage and Securing		
8.2.4.1	Loading, stowage and discharge of heavy weights		
8.2.4.1.1	explains how a load should be spread over an area of deck or tank top by the use of dunnage to avoid heavy point loading between beams and floors		
8.2.4.1.2	states that special supports or cradles will need to be built for awkwardly shaped lifts		
8.2.4.1.3	explains the use of shoring in a tween-deck to spread the load over a larger part of the ship's structure		
8.2.4.1.4	states that the ship's stability should be checked to ensure that the resulting list will be acceptable		
8.2.4.1.5	states that the weight of the lifting gear should be included in the weight of the lift, both for stability calculations and during consideration of safe working loads		
8.2.4.1.6	explains why double-bottom tanks should be full or empty and the ship upright before starting to load or to discharge		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

8.2.4.1.7	states that additional stays may need setting up to a mast or kingpost		
8.2.4.1.8	states that only experienced winch drivers should be allowed to handle heavy lifts		
8.2.4.1.9	states that all movements should be controlled and steady, avoiding rapid stops and starts		
8.2.4.1.10	describes methods of securing heavy lifts in the hold or on deck		
8.2.4.2	Care of cargo during carriage		
8.2.4.2.1	outlines the content of the Code of Safe Practice for Cargo Stowage and securing		
8.2.4.2.2	describes how to stow and secure containers on deck on vessels which are not specially designed and fitted for the purpose of carrying containers		
8.2.4.2.3	describes the stowage and securing of containers and other cargo units in ships other than cellular container ships		
8.2.4.2.4	describes the contents of the cargo securing manual and its use		
8.2.4.2.5	lists the elements to be considered by the Master when accepting cargo units or vehicles for shipment		
8.2.4.2.6	states that cargo spaces should be regularly inspected to ensure that the cargo, cargo units and vehicles remain safely secured throughout the voyage		
8.2.4.2.7	describes the stowage and securing of road vehicles on ro-ro ships		
8.2.4.2.8	describes recommended methods for the safe stowage and securing of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - portable tanks - portable receptacles - wheel-based (rolling) cargoes - coiled sheet steel - heavy metal products - anchor chains - metal scrap in bulk - flexible intermediate bulk containers - unit loads 		
8.2.4.2.9	summarizes the guidelines for the under-deck stowage of logs		
8.2.4.2.10	describes actions which may be taken in heavy weather to reduce stresses on securing arrangements induced by excessive accelerations		
8.2.4.2.11	describes actions which may be taken once cargo has shifted		
8.2.4.3	Methods and safeguards when Fumigating Holds		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation

No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka

Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

8.2.4.3.1	explains recommendations given in MSC.1/Circ.1264 – Recommendations on the Safe Use of Pesticides in Ships Applicable to the Fumigation of Cargo Holds, contained in the added supplement of the IMSBC Code		
8.2.4.3.2	explains the reasons for the control of pests		
8.2.4.3.3	states that the control of rodents is required by the International Health Regulations		
8.2.4.3.4	describes the methods for the prevention of insect infestation and states the areas to which particular attention should be given		
8.2.4.3.5	explains how contact insecticides in the form of sprays, smokes or lacquers may be used by the crew for dealing with local infestation		
8.2.4.3.6	states that all persons not directly involved in the application should be evacuated from the areas being treated for a period not less than that recommended by the manufacturer of the pesticide		
8.2.4.3.7	states that extensive or hazardous treatments, including fumigation and spraying near human or animal food, should only be undertaken by expert operators		
8.2.4.3.8	states that a fumigator-in-charge should be designated by the fumigation company or appropriate authority		
8.2.4.3.9	lists the information about the fumigation which should be supplied to the Master		
8.2.4.3.10	states that fumigation of empty cargo spaces should always be carried out in port		
8.2.4.3.11	states that crew should remain ashore until the ship is certified gas-free, in writing, by the fumigator-in-charge		
8.2.4.3.12	states that a watchman should be posted to prevent unauthorized boarding and warning notices should be displayed		
8.2.4.3.13	lists the precautions to be taken if essential crew members are permitted to return before aeration (ventilation) of the ship		
8.2.4.3.14	states that entry to spaces under fumigation should never take place except in case of extreme urgency and lists the precautions to be taken if entry is imperative		
8.2.4.3.15	states that fumigation in transit should only be carried out in ships approved for such process by the flag State Administration and that the application should		
8.2.4.3.16	be with the agreement of the port State Administration		
8.2.4.3.17	states that fumigation in transit may be: <ul style="list-style-type: none">- treatment continued during the voyage in a sealed space in which no aeration has taken place before sailing- continuation of in-port fumigation where some aeration has taken place but clearance cannot be issued because of residual gas and the cargo space has been re-sealed before sailing		
8.2.4.3.18	states that precautions are the same in both cases		
8.2.4.3.19	states that at least two members of the crew, including one officer, who have received appropriate training, should		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

<p>8.2.4.3.20</p> <p>8.2.4.3.21</p> <p>8.2.4.3.22</p> <p>8.2.4.3.23</p> <p>8.2.4.3.24</p> <p>8.2.4.3.25</p> <p>8.2.4.3.26</p> <p>8.2.4.3.27</p> <p>8.2.4.3.28</p> <p>8.2.4.3.29</p> <p>8.2.4.3.30</p> <p>8.2.4.3.31</p> <p>8.2.4.3.32</p> <p>8.2.4.3.33</p> <p>8.2.4.3.34</p>	<p>be designated as the trained representative of the Master responsible for ensuring safe conditions after the fumigator-in-charge has handed over that responsibility to the Master</p> <p>states that the trained representative should brief the crew before a fumigation</p> <p>lists the training which the designated representatives should have</p> <p>lists the items which the ship should carry</p> <p>describes the procedures for the fumigation and the handing over of responsibility from the fumigator in-charge to the Master</p> <p>describes the safety checks on gas concentration that should be made throughout the voyage and states that the readings should be entered in the logbook</p> <p>describes the procedures to follow prior to and on arrival at the discharging port</p> <p>describes the precautions to be taken during the discharge of cargo until the ship is certified free of fumigants</p> <p>describes the procedures for the carriage of fumigated freight containers, barges and transport units that are loaded after fumigation without ventilation</p> <p>states that the Master should be informed prior to loading such freight containers, barges and transport units and that they should be identified with suitable warning labels showing the identity of the fumigant and the date and time of fumigation</p> <p>describes the methods which may be used for the control of rodents</p> <p>describes the use of baits by the ship's crew and the precautions to observe</p> <p>explains that the use of pesticides is regulated by Governments, and their use may be limited by the regulations and requirements of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - the country where the cargo is loaded or treated - the country of destination - the country of registration of the ship <p>describes the use of pesticides by the ship's crew and the precautions to observe</p> <p>describes the measures to be taken if clothing becomes contaminated</p> <p>states that, if contact insecticides are to be applied to grain during loading, the Master should be provided. with written instructions on the type and amount of insecticide to be used and on the precautions to be taken</p> <p>states the actions to be taken in the event of exposure to insecticides resulting in illness</p>		
<p>8.2.5</p> <p>8.2.5.1</p>	<p>General knowledge of tankers and tanker operations</p> <p>Terms and definitions</p>		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation

No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka

Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

8.2.5.1.1	defines petroleum as crude oil and liquid hydrocarbon products derived from it		
8.2.5.1.2	states that petroleum gases, principally methane, are extracted from crude oils before shipment		
8.2.5.1.3	explains that 'spiked crude' has additional petroleum gas, usually butane, dissolved in it before shipment		
8.2.5.1.4	states that 'sour crude' contains appreciable amounts of hydrogen sulphide or organic sulphur compounds		
8.2.5.1.5	states that products derived from crude oil include naphtha (gasolines), kerosene, gas oil, diesel oils, lubricating oils, waxes and residual oils such as fuel oil and bitumen		
8.2.5.1.6	explains that vapour pressure of any liquid increases with increasing temperature		
8.2.5.1.7	defines Reid Vapour Pressure (RVP)		
8.2.5.1.8	explains why the pressure in a tank is not necessarily the same as the RVP of the oil it contains, even at the standard temperature		
8.2.5.1.9	states that the flashpoint of a liquid is the lowest temperature at which it gives off sufficient gas to form a flammable mixture in a flashpoint apparatus		
8.2.5.1.10	explains why flashpoint cannot be used as an absolute measure of safety		
8.2.5.1.11	states that 'flammable' means 'capable of being ignited and of burning'		
8.2.5.1.12	defines 'upper flammable limit', 'lower flammable limit' and 'flammable range' and states approximate values for petroleum products		
8.2.5.1.13	defines the auto-ignition temperature as the temperature at which a flammable material will ignite without initiation by a spark or flame and will continue to burn		
8.2.5.1.14	describes the viscosity of a fluid as a measure of its resistance to flow		
8.2.5.1.15	states that viscosity increases as the temperature decreases		
8.2.5.1.16	defines 'pour point' as the lowest temperature at which an oil is observed to flow		
8.2.5.1.17	appreciates that crude carriers in particular have significant residues in tanks which must be accounted for in order to calculate the cargo loaded		
8.2.5.1.18	calculates the volume of dry residue as a uniform layer on the tank bottom		
8.2.5.1.19	calculates the volume of liquid residues as a wedge on the tank bottom		
8.2.5.1.20	knows the limitation of application of wedge calculation		
8.2.5.2	Contents and application of the International Safety Guide for Oil Tankers and Terminals (ISGOTT)		
8.2.5.2.1	explains that ISGOTT provides operational advice to directly assist personnel involved in tanker and terminal operations, including guidance on, and examples of, certain aspects of tanker and terminal operations and how they may be managed		
8.2.5.2.2	explains that ISGOTT provides operational advice to directly assist personnel involved in tanker and terminal operations, including guidance on, and examples of, certain aspects of tanker and terminal operations and how they may be managed		
8.2.5.2.3	identifies the contents of ISGOTT		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

8.2.5.2.4	states that terminal, local or national regulations may also be applicable and should be known by those concerned outlines the general precautions to be taken on tankers regarding: <ul style="list-style-type: none">- smoking, matches and cigarette lighters- naked lights- the galley- electrical equipment- use of tools- entry to enclosed spaces and pump-rooms		
8.2.5.2.5	lists the information which should be exchanged between the ship and the terminal before arrival		
8.2.5.2.6	states that safety procedures are agreed between the tanker and the terminal and include: <ul style="list-style-type: none">- means of summoning emergency services- availability and use of firefighting and other emergency equipment- actions to be taken in case of fire or other emergency- emergency evacuation of the berth		
8.2.5.2.7	states that firefighting equipment should be ready for immediate use		
8.2.5.2.8	states that main engines and other equipment essential for manoeuvring should be ready for use at short notice and the written agreement of the terminal and port authority should be obtained for any work or repairs which would immobilize the ship		
8.2.5.2.9	states that detailed loading or discharging plans are agreed between the ship and the terminal		
8.2.5.2.10	explains that safety measures against pollution and actions to take in case of an accident are agreed before transfer of cargo commences		
8.2.5.2.11	states that, before starting cargo transfer, the responsible officer and the terminal representative must formally agree that they are ready to do so safely		
8.2.5.2.12	states that the terminal should be notified of the intention to use crude oil washing (COW) at least 24 hours in advance		
8.2.5.2.13	explains that tanks should be maintained in an inert condition throughout all operations except when entry to tanks for inspection or repair is necessary		
8.2.5.2.14	explains that the inert gas should have an oxygen content not exceeding 5% by volume		
8.2.5.2.15	states that the oxygen content of cargo tanks should not exceed 8% by volume		
8.2.5.2.16	explains that the inert-gas plant will be used to: <ul style="list-style-type: none">- inert empty cargo tanks- supply inert gas during cargo discharging, deballasting, crude oil washing and tank cleaning		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

<p>8.2.5.2.17</p> <p>8.2.5.2.18</p> <p>8.2.5.2.19</p> <p>8.2.5.2.20</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - purge tanks prior to gas-freeing - top-up the pressure when necessary during a voyage <p>explains that, in the event of a failure of the inert gas system, discharge of cargo or ballast or tank cleaning should be stopped, to prevent air being drawn into the tanks, and operations should only be resumed when a supply of inert gas has been restored</p> <p>describes the hold and tank arrangements of combination carriers</p> <p>describes the safety aspects relating to the operation of double hull tankers</p> <p>outlines the change-over from oil to dry bulk cargo and from dry bulk cargo to oil</p>		
<p>8.2.5.3</p> <p>8.2.5.3.1</p> <p>8.2.5.3.2</p> <p>8.2.5.3.3</p> <p>8.2.5.3.4</p> <p>8.2.5.3.5</p> <p>8.2.5.3.6</p> <p>8.2.5.3.7</p> <p>8.2.5.3.8</p> <p>8.2.5.3.9</p> <p>8.2.5.3.10</p> <p>8.2.5.3.11</p> <p>8.2.5.3.12</p> <p>8.2.5.3.13</p> <p>8.2.5.3.14</p> <p>8.2.5.3.15</p> <p>8.2.5.3.16</p>	<p>Oil tanker operations and related pollution prevention regulations</p> <p>defines ‘segregated ballast’, ‘clean ballast’, ‘dirty ballast’, ‘slop tank’</p> <p>briefly describes an inert gas system (IGS) and sketches the distribution of inert gas to tanks</p> <p>explains the reasons for ballasting</p> <p>states that the capacity and arrangement of segregated ballast tanks is intended to provide sufficient weight, to provide a satisfactory trim and to ensure full immersion of the propeller for normal conditions of sea passages</p> <p>states that on rare occasions weather conditions may be so severe that additional ballast is needed for the safety of the ship</p> <p>states that in crude oil tankers equipped with COW the additional ballast would be carried in tanks that have been washed with crude oil</p> <p>states that the additional ballast must be treated as dirty ballast</p> <p>explains why a ship may have only clean or segregated ballast on board upon arrival at a loading port</p> <p>states the criteria for the discharge of oil from cargo-tank areas of oil tankers</p> <p>outlines the procedures for changing ballast at sea</p> <p>states that, before loading clean ballast, cargo pumps and lines to be used are flushed with clean water into a dirty ballast or slop tank</p> <p>describes how to dispose of dirty ballast</p> <p>describes how to decant the water contents of the slop tank</p> <p>states that a final flushing of cargo pumps and lines to be used for discharge of clean ballast is made to the sea through the oil monitoring and control system</p> <p>explains that the operation of discharging dirty ballast, decanting the slop tanks and flushing lines must be done when more than 50 nautical miles from the nearest land and outside a special area</p> <p>states that only segregated or clean ballast may be discharged within 50 nautical miles of land or inside a special</p>		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

	area		
8.2.5.3.17	explains the reasons for tank cleaning		
8.2.5.3.18	briefly describes the use of fixed and portable machines for tank cleaning		
8.2.5.3.19	describes the use of slop tanks during tank cleaning		
8.2.5.3.20	states that an inert atmosphere should be maintained in tanks during tank cleaning in ships fitted with IGS		
8.2.5.3.21	briefly describes crude oil washing and the reasons for requiring it in crude oil tankers of 20000 dwt and above		
8.2.5.3.22	states that crude oil washing can only be carried out with fixed washing machines in inerted tanks		
8.2.5.3.23	states that the oil residues in the slop tank resulting from tank cleaning and disposal of dirty ballast may be: <ul style="list-style-type: none">- pumped ashore at the loading terminal- retained on board and segregated from the next cargo- retained on board and the new cargo loaded on top of them		
8.2.5.3.24	states that the process of tank cleaning, changing ballast, decanting the water from slop tanks and loading the next cargo over the retained oil is known as the load-on-top procedure		
8.2.5.3.25	states that details of cargo operations, ballasting and deballasting, tank cleaning, discharge of water from slop tanks and disposal of residues are entered in the ship's Oil Record Book		
8.2.5.3.26	defines gas-freeing as the replacement of hydrocarbon vapours or inert gas by air lists the reasons for gas-freeing		
8.2.5.3.27	explains why inert gas is used to purge the tanks of hydrocarbon vapours before introducing air on suitably		
8.2.5.3.28	equipped ships		
8.2.5.3.29	states that a mechanical fixed system is used or portable fans are used		
8.2.5.3.30	states that checks are made during gas-freeing with combustible-gas indicators, oxygen meters and toxic-gas detectors		
8.2.5.3.31	states that the supply of inert gas to the tank is shut off		
8.2.5.3.32	explains the need to maintain ventilation and to check the atmosphere frequently when persons are working in a tank		
8.2.5.3.33	appreciates that the change of volume with temperature of oils is not linear		
8.2.5.3.34	states that cargo calculation is carried out as if the oil were at a standard temperature understands that the volume of the oil must be corrected from its actual temperature when measured to the		
8.2.5.3.35	standard temperature		
8.2.5.3.36	states that the cargo calculation is carried out as if the density of the oil was that at the standard temperature		
8.2.5.3.37	explains that the density of oil must be corrected from its actual density to that at the standard temperature appreciates that different types of oils have different coefficients of expansion and that there are separate		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@sltnet.lk

8.2.5.3.38	Petroleum Measurement Tables for Crude Oils, Products and Lubricating Oils		
8.2.5.3.39	understands the difference between mass and weight in air and that one or the other may be required by different administrations		
8.2.5.4	Chemical tankers		
8.2.5.4.1	states that modern chemical tankers have evolved from oil product tankers to take account of special carriage requirements and associated hazards		
8.2.5.4.2	explains that dedicated service usually means that the tanker is designed for the carriage of a particular type of chemical and transports the same type of cargo on each voyage		
8.2.5.4.3	explains that a chemical tanker engaged in parcel trade moves a variety of relatively small lots of chemicals between a number of ports		
8.2.5.4.4	lists the most important of the rules governing chemical tankers as: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - international rules and regulations - national rules and regulations - classification society rules 		
8.2.5.4.5	states that the sea transport of liquid chemicals in bulk is internationally regulated, as regards safety and pollution aspects, through Conventions adopted by the International Maritime Organization (IMO)		
8.2.5.4.6	explains that the Convention requirements are supplemented by recommendations, specifications and Codes adopted by IMO		
8.2.5.4.7	states that the IMO Conventions covering the carriage of chemicals in bulk are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - the International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea (SOLAS), 1974, as amended, Chapter VII - the International Convention for the Prevention of Pollution from Ships, 1973, as modified by the 1978 Protocol (MARPOL 73/78), as amended, Annex II 		
8.2.5.4.8	states that the most important Codes and standards covering the transport of liquid chemicals are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - the Bulk Chemical Codes - Code for the Construction and Equipment of Ships Carrying Dangerous Chemicals in Bulk (BCH Code) - International Code for the Construction and Equipment of Ships Carrying Dangerous Chemicals in Bulk (IBC) Code - Standards for Procedures and Arrangements for the discharge of Noxious Liquid Substances (P and A Standards) 		
8.2.5.4.9	defines a chemical tanker as a cargo ship constructed or adapted and used for the carriage in bulk of any liquid		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation

No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka

Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

8.2.5.4.10	product listed in Chapter 17 of the IBC Code explains that products are included in the list in Chapter 17 because of their safety hazards or because of their pollution hazards or both		
8.2.5.4.11	states that safety hazards may be one or more of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none">- fire hazard in excess of that of petroleum products- toxicity- corrosivity- reactivity with water, air or other chemicals or self-reaction (polymerization, decomposition)		
8.2.5.4.12	states that, in addition to the survey requirements for any ship, chemical tankers must undergo surveys of the cargo-containment and handling arrangements for the issue of an International Certificate Fitness for the Carriage of Dangerous Chemicals in Bulk		
8.2.5.4.13	explains that the Bulk Chemical Codes divide tankers into three ship types, Type 1, Type 2 and Type 3, which reflect the hazard ratings of the cargoes which may be carried		
8.2.5.4.14	states that a Type 1 ship is intended for the transportation of products considered to present the greatest overall hazards and Type 2 or Type 3 for products of progressively lesser hazards		
8.2.5.4.15	states that the division into ship types is based on the ship's capability to survive specified damage caused by collision or stranding and the location of the cargo tanks in relation to such damage		
8.2.5.4.16	illustrates, by means of sketches, the location of tanks for each type of ship		
8.2.5.4.17	explains the following descriptions of tanks: <ul style="list-style-type: none">- independent- integral- gravity- pressure		
8.2.5.4.18	states that all materials used for tank construction and associated piping, valves and pumps must be resistant to the cargo carried		
8.2.5.4.19	states that some ships have stainless-steel tanks for the carriage of cargoes which cannot be contained in mild steel		
8.2.5.4.20	explains that mild-steel tanks are normally coated, to protect cargoes from contamination by steel and to make cleaning, gas-freeing and inspection easier		
8.2.5.4.21	states that no single coating is suitable for all cargoes and that the coating manufacturers compatibility data must be used when planning a cargo		
8.2.5.4.22	explains that cofferdams and other void spaces may be included in the cargo-tank area to provide segregation of groups of tanks		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation

No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka

Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

8.2.5.4.23	illustrates typical tank arrangements by means of simple sketches		
8.2.5.4.24	states that the heating medium may be steam, water or thermal oils		
8.2.5.4.25	explains that the heating system may use coils fitted inside the tank or a heat exchanger placed outside the tank		
8.2.5.4.26	describes, with the aid of a drawing, a cargo heating system that uses a heat exchanger placed outside the tank		
8.2.5.4.27	states that there is suitable protective clothing on board which must be worn by all personnel engaged in loading or discharging operations		
8.2.5.4.28	states that, for certain cargoes, there must be respiratory and eye-protection equipment for every person on board for emergency escape		
8.2.5.4.29	states that equipment for evaluation of atmospheres in tanks and other enclosed spaces is provided for <ul style="list-style-type: none">- detection of flammable gases- measurement of oxygen content- measurement of concentration of toxic gas		
8.2.5.4.30	describes how to use an absorption tube gas detector for measuring the concentration of a gas		
8.2.5.4.31	explains what is meant by: <ul style="list-style-type: none">- the threshold limit value (TLV) of a product- the odour threshold		
8.2.5.4.32	states that the atmosphere in tanks and enclosed spaces must be considered dangerous unless appropriate checks prove otherwise		
8.2.5.4.33	states that information about cargoes to be handled is essential to the safety of the vessel and crew		
8.2.5.4.34	states that information for each product may be found on cargo data sheets contained in safety guides or provided by the manufacturer or shipper		
8.2.5.4.35	states that, if sufficient information necessary for the safe handling and carriage of a cargo is not available, the cargo must not be loaded		
8.2.5.4.36	states that information necessary for the safe carriage of a cargo includes: <ul style="list-style-type: none">- a full description of the physical and chemical properties, including reactivity- necessary for its safe containment- action to take in the event of spills or leaks- countermeasures against accidental personal contact- firefighting procedures and firefighting media- procedures for cargo transfer, tank cleaning, gas-freeing and ballasting- details of the stabilizer or inhibitor added to those cargoes, that require one (on the manufacturer's certificate, in the absence of which the cargo should be refused)		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

<p>8.2.5.4.37 8.2.5.4.38 8.2.5.4.39 8.2.5.4.40 8.2.5.4.41 8.2.5.4.42 8.2.5.4.43 8.2.5.4.44 8.2.5.4.45</p>	<p>- First Aid procedures, including the use of specific antidotes for poisons</p> <p>states that tanks are normally subject to thorough inspection and testing for cleanliness before loading</p> <p>explains, with the aid of a simple drawing, how cargo is routed from the manifold to tanks on a chemical tanker with separate lines for each tank</p> <p>explains, with the aid of a simple drawing, a ‘closed circuit’ loading operation using a vapour-return line</p> <p>states that samples are taken from the lines and tanks during loading for purposes of quality control</p> <p>states that visual and audible high-level alarms and a tank overflow control system are required for many chemicals</p> <p>states that personnel involved in unloading should check the information in the relevant data sheets and take all necessary precautions, including the wearing of appropriate protective clothing</p> <p>states that, prior to discharging, samples from tanks and lines are analysed to check if the product has been contaminated on board during the passage</p> <p>explains, with the aid of a simple drawing, how cargo is routed from tank to the manifold on a tanker with deep well pumps and separate lines from each tank</p> <p>states that, in tanks containing cargoes that present a major fire hazard, inert gas or nitrogen is used to maintain a small positive pressure during unloading, to prevent air from entering the tanks</p>		
<p>8.2.5.5 8.2.5.5.1 8.2.5.5.2 8.2.5.5.3 8.2.5.5.4 8.2.5.5.5 8.2.5.5.6</p>	<p>Tank cleaning and control of pollution in chemical tankers</p> <p>states that different cargoes require different tank-cleaning procedures</p> <p>states that most tank cleaning can be done with hot or cold seawater or fresh water, or by ventilation alone, although a few cargoes require special solvents</p> <p>states that fixed or portable tank-washing machines are used</p> <p>lists phases in a tank-cleaning operation as:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - prewash - main wash - fresh water rinse - gas-freeing - drying - inspection and testing <p>explains the use of slop tanks to hold cargo residues and tank washings</p> <p>explains, with the aid of a simple drawing, the cycle of a tank-washing system from the seawater inlet to the</p>		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation

No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka

Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

	slop tank		
8.2.5.5.7	states that Annex II of the MARPOL 73/78 Convention contains regulations for the control of pollution by noxious liquid cargoes carried in bulk or tank washings from such cargoes		
8.2.5.5.8	states that as per the amendments of Annex II of MARPOL, which entered into force on 1 January 2007, a revised annex a new four-category pollution category system for noxious liquid substances; the previous A, B, C and D category system has become X, Y, Z and OS.		
8.2.5.5.9	states that every chemical tanker is required to have a Certificate of Fitness (CoF) indicating that it is certified to carry certain products. The issuance of a CoF will also require a revised Procedures and Arrangements (P and A) Manual.		
8.2.5.5.10	states that each ship which is certified for the carriage of noxious liquid substances in bulk must be provided with a Procedures and Arrangements (P and A) Manual that has been approved by the Administration and a Cargo Record Book		
8.2.5.5.11	states that the Master must ensure that no discharges into the sea of cargo residues or residue/water mixtures containing substances of Category X, Y, Z or OS take place unless they are made in full compliance with the P and A Manual		
8.2.5.5.12	states that carrying out operations in accordance with the ship's P and A Manual ensures that the pollution regulations are complied with		
8.2.5.5.13	states that pollution prevention procedures during cargo transfer, ballasting and tank cleaning should include keeping a watch on: <ul style="list-style-type: none">- levels in cargo, slop or ballast tanks- hoses or loading arms- pumps, valves, gaskets, connections and hatches- spill pans and scuppers- alarms and instrumentation- coordination of operational signals- water around vessel		
8.2.5.5.14	states that personnel on watch should be present at all times during operations and regularly carry out the inspections mentioned in the above		
8.2.5.5.15	states that entries should be made in the Cargo Record Book, on a tank-to-tank basis, of: <ul style="list-style-type: none">- loading- internal transfer of cargo- unloading		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - mandatory prewash in accordance with P and A Manual - cleaning of cargo tanks - discharge into the sea of tank washings - ballasting of cargo tanks - discharge of ballast water from cargo tanks - accidental or other exceptional discharge control by authorized surveyors 		
8.2.5.6	Gas tankers		
8.2.5.6.1	states that the transport by sea of liquid gases in bulk is internationally regulated with regard to safety, through standards laid down by IMO		
8.2.5.6.2	states that chapter VII of the IMO International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea (SOLAS), 1974, as amended, makes the provisions of the International Code for the Construction and Equipment of Ships Carrying Liquefied Gases in Bulk (IGC Code) mandatory		
8.2.5.6.3	states that a liquefied gas is the liquid form of a substance that at normal atmospheric temperatures and pressures would be a gas		
8.2.5.6.4	states that liquefied gas products transported by gas tankers are listed in chapter 19 of the IGC Code		
8.2.5.6.5	states that some of those substances are also covered by the IBC Code		
8.2.5.6.6	divides gas cargoes into four groups as: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - liquefied natural gas (LNG) - liquefied petroleum gas (LPG) - liquefied ethylene gas (LEG) - chemical gases 		
8.2.5.6.7	states that LNG is natural gas from which impurities have been removed, and consists mainly of methane		
8.2.5.6.8	states that LPG is the common name for petroleum gases consisting mainly of butane and propane		
8.2.5.6.9	lists chlorine, ammonia and vinyl chloride monomer as examples of chemical gases		
8.2.5.6.10	states that, in addition to the surveys required for all ships, gas tankers must undergo surveys of the cargo containment equipment and cargo handling arrangements for the issue of an International Certificate of Fitness for the Carriage of Liquefied Gases in Bulk		
8.2.5.6.11	states that the Certificate of Fitness lists the cargoes which may be carried by the ship and may also stipulate conditions for carriage		
8.2.5.6.12	explains the following terms used in the IGC Code:		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@sltnet.lk

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - boiling point - cargo area - cargo containment system - gas carrier - gas-dangerous space or zone - gas-safe space - hold space - interbarrier space - MAR VS - primary barrier - secondary barrier tank dome 		
8.2.5.6.13	explains that the IGC divides ships into four types, 1G, 2G, 2PG and 3G		
8.2.5.6.14	states that a Type 1G ship is intended for the transportation of products considered to present the greatest overall hazard and Types 2G, 2PG and 3G for products of progressively lesser hazards		
8.2.5.6.15	states that the division into ship types is based on the ship's capability to survive specified damage caused by collision or stranding and the location of the cargo tanks in relation to such damage		
8.2.5.6.16	describes, in simple terms: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - integral tank - membrane tank - semi-membrane tank - independent tank - internally insulated tank 		
8.2.5.6.17	explains, in simple terms, the division of independent tanks into: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Type A, generally a self-supporting prismatic tank - Type B, generally a self-supporting spherical tank - Type C, generally a self-supporting cylindrical pressure tank 		
8.2.5.6.18	states that a cargo tank has shut off valves located as close to the tank as possible for all liquid and vapour connections except for safety relief valves		
8.2.5.6.19	states that regulations require remotely operated emergency shutdown (ESD) valves in the cargo piping system		
8.2.5.6.20	states that the operation of the ESD system also stops pumps and compressors		
8.2.5.6.21	states that all cargo tanks must be provided with a pressure-relief system		
8.2.5.6.22	states that all equipment and piping which can be isolated when full of liquid must be provided with a pressure-		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

<p>8.2.5.6.23</p> <p>8.2.5.6.24</p> <p>8.2.5.6.25</p> <p>8.2.5.6.26</p> <p>8.2.5.6.27</p> <p>8.2.5.6.28</p> <p>8.2.5.6.29</p> <p>8.2.5.6.30</p> <p>8.2.5.6.31</p> <p>8.2.5.6.32</p> <p>8.2.5.6.33</p> <p>8.2.5.6.34</p> <p>8.2.5.6.35</p> <p>8.2.5.6.36</p> <p>8.2.5.6.37</p> <p>8.2.5.6.38</p>	<p>relief system</p> <p>states that cargo pumps are usually centrifugal, either deep well pumps or submerged electric pumps, in the tanks with deck-mounted booster pumps, if required</p> <p>describes the uses of cargo heaters and vaporizers</p> <p>explains the effect of transfer of heat to the cargo on cargo temperature and tank pressure</p> <p>states that, except for fully pressurized vessels, means for controlling the pressure must be provided</p> <p>states that pressure in cargo tanks may be controlled by:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - insulation of tanks, to reduce heat transfer - leading cargo boil-off to the ship's boilers or main engine as fuel (ONLY with LNG) - leading cargo boil-off to the ship's reliquefaction plant, where vapour is liquefied and returned to the tank - cooling the liquid in a heat exchanger (indirect system) <p>describes the single-stage direct liquefaction cycle</p> <p>states that the indirect system is only used for those products which cannot be compressed for safety reasons</p> <p>states that inert gas is used to inert hold spaces and inter barrier spaces and to purge tanks</p> <p>states that most gas tankers are fitted with an inert-gas generator</p> <p>states that the liquid level in cargo tanks is commonly measured by means of float gauges</p> <p>states that each cargo tank is fitted with a high-level alarm and automatic shutoff valves to prevent overflow</p> <p>states that each cargo tank is fitted with means for indicating the temperature and pressure</p> <p>explains how cargo leakage through the primary barrier can be detected</p> <p>states that gas tankers have a fixed gas-detection system that gives audible and visual alarms of the accumulation of gas in enclosed spaces such as cargo pump-rooms, compressor rooms, hold spaces and inter barrier spaces</p> <p>describes briefly the arrangements for firefighting on deck in the cargo area</p> <p>describes the water-spray system for ships carrying flammable or toxic products</p>		
<p>8.2.5.7</p> <p>8.2.5.7.1</p> <p>8.2.5.7.2</p>	<p>Cargo operations in gas tankers</p> <p>states that information for each product may be found on cargo data sheets contained in safety guides or obtained from the shipper</p> <p>states that information needed before loading includes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - a full description of the physical and chemical properties that are necessary for the safe containment of the cargo - action to be taken in the event of spills or leaks - counter-measures against accidental personal contact 		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@sltnet.lk

<p>8.2.5.7.3</p> <p>8.2.5.7.4</p> <p>8.2.5.7.5</p> <p>8.2.5.7.6</p> <p>8.2.5.7.7</p> <p>8.2.5.7.8</p> <p>8.2.5.7.9</p> <p>8.2.5.7.10</p> <p>8.2.5.7.11</p> <p>8.2.5.7.12</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - firefighting procedures and firefighting media - procedures for cargo transfer, gas-freeing, ballasting, tank cleaning and changing cargoes - special equipment for particular cargoes - minimum temperatures of the inner hull steel - emergency procedures <p>states that products that react when mixed should only be loaded if the complete cargo systems are separated</p> <p>states that personnel should be made aware of the hazards and be required to use the appropriate protective equipment provided</p> <p>states that the Master should ensure proper liaison between the ship and the terminal before and throughout cargo-transfer operations</p> <p>describes briefly the following cargo operations:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - drying - inerting - purging - cooling down - loading - cargo conditioning on passage - discharging - changing cargoes - gas-freeing - preparing for tank inspection <p>states that all operations involving cargo, ballast and bunkers should be carried out in accordance with the applicable international and local pollution regulations</p> <p>states that some gas cargoes are subject to the regulations of Annex II of MARPOL 73/78</p> <p>explains that a gas tanker requires an International Pollution Prevention Certificate for the Carriage of Noxious Liquid Substances in Bulk (NLS Certificate) to carry such products</p> <p>states that such cargoes must be handled in accordance with the Procedures and Arrangements Manual</p> <p>understands that the mass of vapour present in the ullage space is included in the calculation of liquefied gases calculates the vapour mass</p>		
<p>8.2.6</p> <p>8.2.6.1</p>	<p>Knowledge of the operational and design limitations of bulk carriers</p> <p>Operational and design limitations of bulk carriers</p>		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

8.2.6.1.1	<p>explains that the problems that are generally considered to be associated with bulk carriers includes, but is not limited to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">- high density cargoes, leading to loss of buoyancy or structural failure, if holds are flooded in the loaded condition- high loading rate, leading to possible loss of control of load condition, with consequent high stresses- vulnerability to internal damage during cargo loading and discharging operations, leading to protective coating damage, accelerated corrosion, and local structural failure- low freeboard, leading to high green sea loads on deck structures- vulnerability to flooding of forward holds- rapid corrosion caused by corrosive cargo- minor damage to single sided ship structures or hatch covers can lead to hold flooding		
8.2.6.1.2	<p>explains that the nature of bulk cargoes can give rise to a number of problems</p>		
8.2.6.1.3	<p>explains that cargoes such as coal produces gas and acidic conditions, high density cargoes produce large void spaces, and other cargoes can produce stability problems due to shifting or liquefaction</p>		
8.2.6.1.4	<p>explains that loaded bulk carriers tend to have a low freeboard making forward hatches vulnerable to heavy seas</p>		
8.2.6.1.5	<p>explains that a single hold flooding on a bulk carrier, particularly when loaded with high density cargoes, can have a severe adverse effect on stability and hull stresses</p>		
8.2.6.1.6	<p>explains that the corrosive effects of some cargoes accelerate the rate of deterioration of internal structures</p>		
8.2.6.1.7	<p>describes that ships can be more heavily stressed during ballast passage compared to loaded passage because the use of one or two ballast tanks leads to uneven weight distribution along the hull</p>		
8.2.6.1.8	<p>states that hold cleaning, ballasting at sea and ballast exchange carried out at sea are vulnerable aspects of a ballast voyage for a bulk carrier</p>		
8.2.6.1.9	<p>describes that improper cleaning during hold cleaning leads to accelerated corrosion and structural faults going unnoticed</p>		
8.2.6.1.10	<p>states that additional hull stresses due to redistribution of ballast are imposed on the ship carrying out ballasting at sea and ballast water exchange which is required for operational and environmental reasons</p>		
8.2.6.1.11	<p>explains that there is also a possibility of hull damage from ‘sloshing’ when ballasting at sea</p>		
8.2.6.1.12	<p>states that this is also one of the reasons why some ships have been fitted with hull stress monitoring systems</p>		
8.2.6.1.13	<p>explains why at shallow drafts ships in ballast are vulnerable to slamming with the consequent risk of bottom damage</p>		
8.2.6.1.14	<p>explains why loading operation of a bulk carrier has been identified as an area of operations that can have</p>		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

8.2.6.1.15	describes that loading of bulk carriers requires the careful consideration of the loads imparted to the ship structure		
8.2.6.1.16	explains that high density cargoes bring high local stresses, particularly in shear, if the vessel is block loaded and can also cause local damage and fatigue when being loaded		
8.2.6.1.17	explains that loading at excessive speeds can cause high local stresses		
8.2.6.1.18	describes that high loading rates make it difficult to monitor the amount of cargo being loaded		
8.2.6.1.19	explains that continued over stressing has a cumulative effect with respect to fatigue		
8.2.6.1.20	explains that discharging the cargoes causes similar problems to that of loading		
8.2.6.1.21	describes that in addition to the problems associated with discharging, mechanical grabs, bulldozers, hydraulic hammers, and other machinery produce local damage and loading that can weaken the ship's structure		
8.2.6.1.22	explains that ballasting operations during discharge can also add to the stresses on the ship if not planned and executed properly		
8.2.6.1.23	explains as with loading, the need of good coordination at the time of discharge and ballasting of the ship		
8.2.6.1.24	explains the reason why maintenance and inspection play an important part in the safety of bulk carriers		
8.2.6.1.25	explains that all ships are designed with limits deliberately imposed on their operations to ensure that structural integrity is maintained		
8.2.6.1.26	explains that exceeding these limits may over-stress the structure and lead to catastrophic failure		
8.2.6.1.27	explains that the ship's hull structure is designed to withstand the static loads of the ship's weight and sea water pressure on the hull and the dynamic loads on the hull due to waves and ship's motion		
8.2.6.1.28	explains that overloading in any one cargo hold space will increase static stress in the hull structure and reduce the capability of the hull structure to withstand dynamic loads when the ship is at sea		
8.2.6.1.29	explains that many bulk carriers are fitted with very large hatch openings to facilitate cargo loading and unloading and these openings may represent points of weakness in the hull since they reduce the torsional resistance of the hull		
8.2.6.1.30	explains that when bulk carriers are loaded with dense and heavy cargoes such as iron, dense ores or steel products they rely on large empty spaces in holds, ballast tanks, voids and forward tanks as reserve buoyancy to stay afloat and if seawater enters any of these spaces due to damaged hull, hatches, accesses, ventilators or air pipes, the vessel can lose buoyancy and sink very quickly		
8.2.6.1.31	explains the need for all crew on the ship to be aware that any loss of buoyancy in forward spaces due to flooding will reduce the freeboard forward and dramatically increase the forces of extreme weather on hull structures and hatches		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

8.2.6.1.32	explains why there is an urgent need for action if a ship takes on an unusual trim or heel, or if her motions become changed		
8.2.6.1.33	explains the vulnerability of the bulkhead in bulk carriers between number 1 and 2 holds identified by IACS and IMO and the potential consequences of this failing		
8.2.6.2	SOLAS, chapter XII Additional safety measures for bulk carriers		
8.2.6.2.1	explains the regulations provided as additional safety measures for bulk carriers in chapter XII of the SOLAS Convention which apply to bulk carriers of 150m in length and upwards, carrying high density dry bulk cargoes, including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - damage stability and flotation - structure of bulkheads and double bottoms - overall longitudinal strength in the flooded state - strength and flooding requirements for carrying cargoes with densities of 1,000 kg/m³ or greater - the bulkhead strength requirements for carrying cargoes of 1,780 kg/m³ or greater - hold loading - cargo density declarations - provision of a loading instrument - hold, ballast and dry space water ingress alarms - availability of pumping systems - restrictions from sailing with any hold empty - the imposition of restrictions on loading higher density cargoes and homogenous loading in adjacent holds, including the endorsement of loading information and marking of the ship 		
8.2.6.2.2	explains that no bulk carrier over ten years old can carry a high density bulk cargo unless she has undergone either a periodical survey or a survey of her cargo holds to an equivalent extent, as required by regulation XII/7		
8.2.6.3	CSR Bulk		
8.2.6.3.1	explains that the IACS Common Structural Rules (CSR) are classification society rules covering structural requirements for bulk carriers and tankers		
8.2.6.3.2	states that IACS Common Structural Rules (CSR) Bulk which contains structural requirements are applicable for bulk carriers with L > 90 m signed for construction after 1 April 2006		
8.2.6.3.3	explains that vessels built to CSR shall have overall safety of the hull structure equivalent to or better than that currently achieved by present rules		
8.2.6.3.4	explains that the reasons for implementing these rules are:		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

<p>8.2.6.3.5 8.2.6.3.6</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - to eliminate competition between class societies with respect to structural requirements and standards - to employ the combined experience and recourses of all IACS societies to develop a single standard, or set of rules - to fully embrace the intentions of the anticipated IMO requirements for goal based new construction standards - to ensure that a vessel meeting this new standard will be recognized by the industry as being at least as safe and robust as would have been required by any of the existing rules <p>explains the general benefits of these rules</p> <p>discusses the critical areas of weakness identified in bulk carrier and tanker structure and the requirements for enhanced inspection identified in these rules</p>		
<p>8.2.7</p> <p>8.2.7.1</p> <p>8.2.7.1.1 8.2.7.1.2</p> <p>8.2.7.1.3</p> <p>8.2.7.1.4 8.2.7.1.5</p> <p>8.2.7.1.6</p> <p>8.2.7.1.7 8.2.7.1.8</p>	<p>Ability to use all available shipboard data related to loading, care and unloading of bulk cargoes</p> <p>Application of all available shipboard data related to loading, care and unloading of bulk cargoes</p> <p>outlines and describes all relevant information to be appraised prior planning of loading a bulk cargo</p> <p>outlines the relevant publications, IMO codes and recommendations that should be referred to prior loading a bulk cargo:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - SOLAS regulation VI/7 and the related Code of Practice for the Safe Loading and Unloading of Bulk Carriers (BLU Code) - International Maritime Solid Bulk Cargoes (IMSBC) - International Code for the Safe Carriage of Grain in Bulk - Code of Safe Practice for Cargo Stowage and Securing <p>explains the procedure for loading a bulk cargo in detail</p> <p>prepares cargo stowage plans after carefully considering and assessing information such as seasonal load line zones, port restrictions, shipboard limits, e.g. draft, cargo capacity, stability, stresses and loading rates</p> <p>explains that prior to loading bulk cargo, the shipper should declare characteristics and density, stowage factor, angle of repose, amounts and special properties of the cargo</p> <p>explains that in preparing the vessel for a safe planning and cargo stowage, the loading and unloading sequences and other operational matters should be informed well in advance by the charterers/terminal</p> <p>explains the content of the loading manual</p> <p>explains that the consumption of ship's bunkers, consumption/generation of fresh water, during the voyage should</p>		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

<p>8.2.7.1.9</p> <p>8.2.7.1.10</p> <p>8.2.7.1.11</p> <p>8.2.7.1.12</p> <p>8.2.7.1.13</p> <p>8.2.7.1.14</p> <p>8.2.7.1.15</p>	<p>be taken into account when carrying out the stress and displacement calculations</p> <p>explains that loading and unloading sequences must consider the loading rate, the de-ballasting capacity and the applicable strength and draught limitations</p> <p>plans the loading, care and unloading of bulk cargoes using the ship's approved loading manual and the typical information provided</p> <p>describes the action that should be taken if the Master does not believe they have been provided with the required or correct information relating to the cargo to be loaded</p> <p>describes the requirements for the carriage of loading instruments</p> <p>describes the typical information that can be obtained from a loading instrument</p> <p>explains the certification, testing and use of a loading instrument</p> <p>utilizes a typical loading instrument to plan and monitor bulk carrier loading, ballast exchange and discharge operations</p>		
<p>8.2.7.2</p> <p>8.2.7.2.1</p>	<p>Code of practice for the safe loading and unloading of bulk carriers (BLU Code)</p> <p>outlines the contents of the Code of Practice for the Safe Loading and Unloading of Bulk Carriers (BLU Code) in relation to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - planning the sequence of operations - communications and coordination between ship and terminal - allocation of ships to appropriate terminals - condition of ships and terminal equipment - training of ship and terminal personnel - requirement to be familiar with and comply with local regulations - use of safety checklists - responsibility of the Master - additional considerations in relation to dangerous cargoes - the use of the BLU Manual by terminal staff - the impact of arrival and departure conditions on manoeuvrability - actions to minimize hull and local stress - actions to take where acceptable hull and local stress levels may be exceeded 		
<p>8.2.8</p>	<p>Ability to establish procedures for safe cargo handling in accordance with the provisions of the relevant instruments such as IMDG Code, IMSBC Code, MARPOL 73/78 Annexes III and V and other relevant information</p>		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

8.2.8.1	Establish procedures for safe cargo handling in accordance with the provisions of the relevant instruments such as IMDG Code, IMSBC Code, MARPOL 73/78, Annexes III and V		
8.2.8.1.1	explains the procedures that should be followed for accepting solid bulk cargoes, packaged dangerous goods and marine pollutants for shipment in terms of: <ul style="list-style-type: none">- the required documentation- ensuring that the condition and labelling of the goods are fit for carriage- ensuring that the vessel is able to safely stow the cargo in terms of vessel certification, the ability to achieve separation and segregation requirements and the availability of any particular safety equipment that might be required		
8.2.8.1.2	develops stowage plans for cargoes that contain multiple packaged dangerous goods and ensure that separation and segregation requirements of IMDG, IMSBC and MARPOL are achieved		
8.2.8.1.3	prepares dangerous goods manifests and stowage plans in accordance with IMDG requirements		
8.2.8.1.4	discusses the preparations and precautions that should be taken prior to the handling of bulk cargoes, packaged dangerous goods and marine pollutants in terms of: <ul style="list-style-type: none">- preparation of spaces- mooring of the ship- information exchange and communication with port and regulatory authorities- flag and light signals- provision of emergency, fire and protective equipment		
8.2.8.1.5	identifies the appropriate action to take in case of general and medical emergencies involving packaged dangerous goods using the EMS and MFAG guidance of the IMDG Code		
8.2.8.1.6	discusses the risks that might be created by undeclared dangerous goods or goods that are not packaged or separated/segregated in accordance with the IMDG Code		
8.2.8.1.	explains that the loading and discharge of dangerous goods, bulk cargoes and marine pollutants may be subject to port and national regulations in loading and discharge ports in addition to the requirements of the I MO codes		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

8.2.8.1.8	explains that there are procedures also given in the safety management system for the reporting of incidents involving the loss, or likely loss of harmful substances		
8.2.8.1.9	states that the ship carrying marine pollutants should have a special list or manifest or detailed plan showing the location of these goods as per MARPOL Annex III/4(3)		
8.2.8.1.10	states that the Master and chief mate should ensure that marine pollutants are stowed in the location specified in the special list or manifest or detailed plan		
8.2.8.1.11	states that the information provided on the special list or manifest should be compliant with section 5.4.3 of the IMDG Code as per MARPOL Annex III/4(3)		
8.2.8.1.12	states that the Master and chief mate should ensure that when marine pollutants or any other dangerous goods are loaded on their ship, they must be stowed as required by chapter 7.1, section 7.1.4 of the IMDG Code in order to comply with MARPOL Annex III/5		
8.2.8.1.13	states that to avoid accident which may lead to marine pollution, the Master and chief mate should take note that marine pollutants should not be placed on the outer row or out board stow at the side of the ship. In addition, if they are stowed on deck, they should be located in such a way that any leakage will not escape into the sea and containers are not in exposed location where they may be damaged by the action of the sea or weather		
8.2.8.1.14	states that as given in MARPOL Annex III/5, the Master and chief officer should ensure that when marine pollutants or any other dangerous goods are carried on their ship, the stowage and securing must be in accordance with the requirements of the Document of Compliance (DOC) and approved Cargo Securing Manual (CSM)		
8.2.8.1.15	states that the disposal of dry bulk cargo residues is regulated by the requirements of MARPOL Annex V which governs garbage disposal at sea		
8.2.8.1.16	states that as per the guidelines given in MARPOL Annex V, cargo-associated waste means all materials which have become wastes as a result of use on board a ship for cargo stowage and handling and this includes but is not limited to dunnage, shoring, pallets, lining and packing materials, plywood, paper, cardboard, wire, and steel strapping		
8.2.8.1.17	states that as per the guidelines given in MARPOL Annex V, operational wastes means all cargo-associated waste and maintenance waste, and cargo residues		
8.2.8.1.18	states that as per the guidelines given in MARPOL Annex V, cargo residues, expected to be in small quantities, are defined as the remnants of any cargo		
8.2.8.1.19	material on board that cannot be placed in proper cargo holds (loading excess and spillage) or which remain in cargo holds and elsewhere after unloading		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@sltnet.lk

<p>8.2.8.1.2 8.2.8.1.21 8.2.8.1.22 8.2.8.1.23 8.2.8.1.24 8.2.8.1.25 8.2.8.1.26</p>	<p>procedures are completed (unloading residual and spillage)</p> <p>states that this means that under the terms of MARPOL 73/78, discharge of cargo residues, except in limited safety circumstances, is prohibited until the ship is more than twelve nautical miles from the nearest land</p> <p>states that minimization of cargo residue wash down and discharge should form part of the ship's Garbage Management Plan and all residue discharges should be recorded as garbage category 4</p> <p>states that discharges of cargo residues also require start and stop positions to be recorded in the Garbage record book</p> <p>states that cargo materials contained in the cargo hold bilge water is not treated as cargo residues provided that the cargo material is not classified as a marine pollutant in the IMDG Code and the bilge water is discharged from a loaded hold through the vessel's fixed piping bilge drainage system</p> <p>explains that cargo residues are created through inefficiencies in loading, unloading and on-board handling</p> <p>states that as cargo residues fall under the scope of these guidelines provided by MARPOL Annex V, it may, in certain cases, be difficult for port reception facilities to handle such residues and is therefore recommended that cargo be unloaded as efficiently as possible in order to avoid or minimize cargo residues</p> <p>states that spillage of the cargo during transfer operations should be carefully controlled, both on board and from dockside and since this spillage typically occurs in port, it should be completely cleaned up prior to sailing and either delivered into the intended cargo space or into the port reception facility</p> <p>states that areas on the ship where spillage is most common should be protected such that the residues are easily recovered</p>		
<p>8.2.9 8.2.9.1 8.2.9.1.1 8.2.9.1.2</p>	<p>Ability to explain the basic principles for establishing effective communications and improving working relationship between ship and terminal personnel</p> <p>Basic principles for establishing effective communications and improving working relationships between ship and terminal personnel</p> <p>explains the necessity for effective communication and working relationships between ship and terminal</p> <p>outlines and describes the information that should be exchanged between the ship and terminal:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - prior to ship's arrival - when arriving in a part loaded condition or with residues - for combination carriers (OBO or O/O) - in relation to the readiness of holds to load cargo 		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

8.2.9.1.3	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - in ensuring that the plan and understanding of the operation is up to date and shared by both the ship and terminal - ensuring that the cargo declaration as required by chapter VI of SOLAS 1974 is completed - provisions for changing loading or unloading plans <p>states that the loading plans should be kept by the ship and terminal for a period of six months</p>		
8.3	Carriage of dangerous goods		
8.3.1	<p>International regulations, standards, codes and recommendations on the carriage of dangerous cargoes, including the International Maritime Dangerous Goods (IMDG) Code and the International Maritime Solid Bulk Cargoes (IMSBC) Code</p>		
8.3.1.1	<p>International regulations and codes</p>		
8.3.1.1.1	<p>understands and applies the content of international regulations standards, codes and recommendations on the carriage of dangerous cargoes, including the International Maritime Dangerous Goods (IMDG) Code, the International Maritime Solid Bulk Cargoes (IMSBC) Code, International Code for the Construction and Equipment of Ships Carrying Liquefied Gases in Bulk (IGC Code), International Code for the Construction and Equipment of Ships carrying Dangerous Chemicals in Bulk (IBC Code)</p>		
8.3.2	<p>Carriage of dangerous, hazardous and harmful cargoes; precautions during loading and unloading and care during the voyage</p>		
8.3.2.1	<p>Dangerous goods in packages</p>		
8.3.2.1.1	<p>states that the IMDG Code is an evolving document and is updated every two years to take account of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - new dangerous goods which have to be included - new technology and methods of working with or handling dangerous goods - safety concerns which arise as a result of experience 		
8.3.2.1.2	lists the explosives which may be carried on a passenger ship		
8.3.2.1.3	describes the contents of the shipper's declaration of dangerous goods		
8.3.2.1.4	identifies the marking and labelling required on packages or cargo units		
8.3.2.1.5	states why additional labelling may be necessary to meet the requirements for through transport		
8.3.2.1.6	verifies that the documentation provided to the ship and the packaging and labelling of packaged dangerous cargo		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation

No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka

Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

8.3.2.1.7	complies with the requirements of the IMDG Code explains the actions to take when documentation, packaging, labelling or the condition of packages does not meet the requirements of the IMDG Code		
8.3.2.1.8	plans the stowage and segregation of a cargo containing dangerous goods when provided with the loading list, the copies of the shipper's declarations and the IMDG Code to plan a stow and segregation and		
8.3.2.1.9	prepares the dangerous goods manifest and stowage plan for a cargo containing multiple dangerous goods		
8.3.2.1.10	extracts the relevant references to EmS and MFIAG		
8.3.2.1.11	identifies the appropriate action to take in emergency and medical first aid situations involving dangerous goods		
8.3.2.1.12	describes the requirements of SOLAS chapter VII on the carriage of dangerous goods		
8.3.2.1.13	explains that the IMDG Code should be followed to ensure compliance with the requirements of SOLAS for the carriage of dangerous goods in packaged form		
8.3.2.1.14	explains that the Code ensures safety mainly by stipulating the packaging required and the segregation from other cargoes with which there could be an adverse reaction		
8.3.2.1.15	states that the Code comprises 7 parts, which is presented in two books: Volume 1 and Volume 2		
8.3.2.1.16	states that it is necessary to use both books to obtain the required information when shipping dangerous goods by sea		
8.3.2.1.17	states that the Code also contains a supplement		
8.3.2.1.18	lists the contents of Volume 1 (Parts 1 -2 & 4-7 of the Code) which comprises: <ul style="list-style-type: none">- part 1, general provisions, definitions and training- part 2, classifications- part 4, packing and tank provisions- part 5, consignment procedures- part 6, construction and testing of packagings, intermediate bulk containers (IBCs), large packagings, portable tanks, multi-element gas containers (MEGCS) and road tank vehicles- part 7, requirements concerning transport operations		
8.3.2.1.19	lists the contents of Volume 2 (Part 3 and the Appendices of the Code) which comprises: <ul style="list-style-type: none">- part 3, dangerous goods list (DGL) and limited quantities exceptions- appendix a, list of generic and n.o.s. (not otherwise specified) proper shipping names- appendix b, glossary of terms- alphabetical index		
8.3.2.1.20	states that the dangerous goods list (DGL) is the central core of the IMDG Code and presents information on		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation

No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

8.3.2.1.21	transport requirements in a coded form states that the supplement contains the following texts related to the Code: <ul style="list-style-type: none">- emergency response procedures for ships carrying dangerous goods- medical first aid guide- reporting procedures- IMO/ILO/ECE guidelines for packing cargo transport units- safe use of pesticides in ships- international code for the carriage of packaged irradiated nuclear fuel, plutonium and high-level radioactive wastes on board ships		
8.3.2.1.22	states that the purpose of the IMDG Code's classification system is: <ul style="list-style-type: none">- to distinguish between goods which are considered to be dangerous for transport and those which are not- to identify the dangers which are presented by dangerous goods in transport- to ensure that the correct measures are taken to enable these goods to be transported safely without risk to persons or property (both within the port and on the ship)		
8.3.2.1.23	states that dangerous goods are classified into 9 classes according to properties		
8.3.2.1.24	states that the way in which different classes of dangerous goods are handled in transport will depend upon these properties and hazards, for example: <ul style="list-style-type: none">- the type of packaging that can be used- what classes of dangerous goods can be transported together in freight containers- where the goods can be stored within the port and on the ship		
8.3.2.1.25	lists the 9 classes of dangerous goods in the IMDG Code, which are: <ul style="list-style-type: none">- class 1 explosives- class 2 gases- class 3 flammable liquids- class 4 flammable solids- class 5 oxidizing substances and organic peroxides- class 6 toxic and infectious substances- class 7 radioactive material- class 8 corrosive substances- class 9 miscellaneous dangerous substances and articles		
8.3.2.1.	states that the 9 hazard classes have been established internationally by a United Nations (UN) committee to		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation

No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka

Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

8.3.2.1.27	ensure that all modes of transport (road, rail, air and sea) classify dangerous goods in the same way states that by testing the dangerous goods according to UN test procedures, a shipper is able to classify dangerous goods according to the 9 hazard classes		
8.3.2.1.28	explains that the hazard presented by each class is identified by an internationally accepted hazard warning label (diamond)		
8.3.2.1.29	states that this hazard warning label appears on the outer packaging of the dangerous goods when they are being transported as a warning to all those working within the transport chain or coming into contact with them		
8.3.2.1.30	states that these hazard warning labels are pictured inside the front cover of Volume 1 of the IMDG Code		
8.3.2.1.31	states that the dangerous goods, within each of the 9 hazard classes, are uniquely identified by two pieces of information: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - a four-digit number known as the UN number which is preceded by the letters UN - the corresponding proper shipping name (PSN) - for example, kerosene is identified in the IMDG Code by its UN number UN 1223 and the PSN Kerosene 		
8.3.2.1.32	states that together the UN Number and PSN uniquely identifies dangerous goods to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - enable rapid and precise identification during transport - ensure the correct handling, stowage, segregation etc., - in the event of an emergency, ensure that the correct procedures are followed 		
8.3.2.1.33	explains that the purpose of using a four-digit number to identify dangerous goods is to enhance safety by: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - overcoming language barriers - the four-digit number is easily understood in all languages - avoiding confusing similar names - e.g. TITANIUM POWDER, WETTED UN 1352 which is a flammable solid in class 4.1 and has very different transport requirements to TITANIUM POWDER, DRY UN 2546 which is spontaneously combustible in class 4.2 		
8.3.2.1.34	states that the PSN must be used for transport purposes on documentation/labelling etc.		
8.3.2.1.35	states that no alternatives or variations are permitted unless specifically stated		
8.3.2.1.36	states that the PSN is that part of the name which appears in the Dangerous Goods List or the Alphabetical Index in capital letters only		
8.3.2.1.37	states that any text in lower case is only descriptive and is not part of the PSN		
8.3.2.1.38	states that the Dangerous goods list (DGL) is presented across 2 pages of the IMDG Code and is divided into 18 columns for each individual dangerous good listed		
8.3.2.1.39	states that much of the information contained in the DGL is coded to make it easier to present in a table		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation

No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka

Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

8.3.2.1.40	states that the DGL is arranged in UN Number order; column 1 and column 18 contains the UN Number		
8.3.2.1.41	states that to look up an entry only the UN Number is required		
8.3.2.1.42	states that dangerous goods can also be searched using the PSN		
8.3.2.1.43	explains that if the UN Number is not given but the dangerous good has the PSN, its associated UN Number can be located by looking at the alphabetical index at the back of Volume 2 of the IMDG Code		
8.3.2.1.44	explains that the IMDG Code contains clearly defined recommendations for the training of all staff who handle or process dangerous goods shipments for transportation by sea. The full training requirements can be found in the IMDG Code Volume 1, Chapter 1.3 states that a packing certificate is also required, certifying that a container or vehicle has been properly packed and secured, if loaded with dangerous goods		
8.3.2.1.45	describes the information given for individual substances		
8.3.2.1.46	states that an index of dangerous goods is included in Volume 1 of the IMDG Code		
8.3.2.1.47	explains how to obtain the references to the relevant Emergency Schedule (EmS) and the entry in the Medical First Aid Guide for Use in Accidents Involving Dangerous Goods (MFAG)		
8.3.2.1.48	describes the information given for individual substances		
8.3.2.1.49	states the requirement for a dangerous goods manifest or stowage plan and describes how they should be prepared		
8.3.2.1.50	lists, by headings, the information given in an emergency schedule		
8.3.2.1.51	defines 'dangerous substances', 'port authority', 'regulatory authority', 'designated port office' and 'responsible person' as used in the Recommendations on the Safe Transport, Handling and Storage of Dangerous Substances in Port Areas		
8.3.2.1.52	explains that a port authority may be empowered to refuse dangerous substances if it is considered that their presence would endanger life or property because of: <ul style="list-style-type: none">- their condition- the condition of their containment- the condition of their mode of conveyance- conditions in the port area		
8.3.2.1.53	states that, if any dangerous substance constitutes an unacceptable hazard, the port authority should be able to order the removal of such substance or any ship, package, container, portable tank or vehicle containing it		
8.3.2.1.54	states that a port authority will normally require notification at least 24 hours in advance of the transport or handling of dangerous substances, including those which are not for discharge at that port		
8.3.2.1.55	describes the inspections which may be made by a port authority		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

8.3.2.1.56	states that the designated port officer should be empowered to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - direct when and where a ship having any dangerous substances on board may anchor, moor or berth - direct a ship to be moved within or to leave the port area - attach conditions appropriate to local circumstances and the quantity and nature of the dangerous substances 		
8.3.2.1.57	states that the regulatory authority may require signals to be shown while transporting or handling dangerous substances		
8.3.2.1.58	describes the signals as: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - by day, flag 'B' of the International Code of Signals - by night, an all-round fixed red light 		
8.3.2.1.59	explains how effective communications with the port authority can be maintained		
8.3.2.1.60	describes the requirements regarding mooring a ship carrying dangerous substances		
8.3.2.1.61	states that at all times there should be sufficient crew on board to maintain a proper watch and operate appliances in the case of an emergency, taking into account the nature and quantity of dangerous substances on board		
8.3.2.1.62	states that a responsible person should be designated to supervise the handling of dangerous goods lists the measures that should be taken by the responsible person in connection with: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - the weather - lighting - protective clothing and equipment - intoxicated persons - fire and other emergency procedures - reporting of incidents and safety precautions 		
8.3.2.1.63	explains that the port authority should be informed of the intention to carry out repair work when dangerous substances are on board		
8.3.2.1.64	explains the handling precautions which should be observed regarding: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - avoidance of damage to packages - access to handling areas - lifting goods over dangerous goods stowed on deck - escape of a dangerous substance from a package entry into enclosed spaces 		
8.3.2.1.65	describes the special precautions for loading or unloading explosives		
8.3.2.2	Solid bulk cargoes		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

8.3.2.2.1	outlines the contents of the International Maritime Solid Bulk Cargoes (IMSBC Code)		
8.3.2.2.2	states that the main hazards associated with the shipment of bulk solids are: <ul style="list-style-type: none">- structural damage due to improper distribution of the cargo- loss or reduction of stability during a voyage- chemical reactions		
8.3.2.2.3	lists the information which should be supplied by the shipper to the Master before loading		
8.3.2.2.4	states that a certificate stating the relevant characteristics of the material should be provided to the Master at the loading point		
8.3.2.2.5	explains that certificates stating transportable moisture limits should be accompanied by a statement that the moisture content is the average moisture content at the time of presenting the certificate		
8.3.2.2.6	explains how to distribute a high-density cargo between holds when detailed information is not available		
8.3.2.2.7	states that the loading instrument, loading information and the ship's stability information book should be used to check the suitability of a proposed stow for stresses and stability		
8.3.2.2.8	describes how to prevent shifting of bulk cargo by reducing an excessively high GM		
8.3.2.2.9	describes precautions to take before, during and after loading of bulk cargo		
8.3.2.2.10	describes the precautions to take to minimize the effect of dust on deck machinery, navigational aids and living quarters		
8.3.2.2.11	describes the health hazards which may be associated with bulk materials		
8.3.2.2.12	states that safety precautions and any appropriate national regulations should be complied with during the handling and carriage of bulk materials		
8.3.2.2.13	states that a copy of the Medical First Aid Guide for Use in Accidents Involving Dangerous Goods should be on board		
8.3.2.2.14	describes how to trim cargoes having an angle of repose: <ul style="list-style-type: none">- less than or equal to 35 degrees- greater than 35 degrees		
8.3.2.2.15	describes how to stow material which flows freely like grain		
8.3.2.2.16	explains the IMSBC Code method for determining the approximate angle of repose on board ship		
8.3.2.2.17	describes the types of cargo which may liquefy during carriage		
8.3.2.2.18	states that cargoes which may liquefy should not be carried with a moisture content above that of the transportable moisture limit		
8.3.2.2.19	explains that such cargoes may look relatively dry when loaded but liquefy as a result of compaction and vibration		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

8.3.2.2.20	during the passage states that such cargoes should be trimmed reasonably level, regardless of the angle of repose stated		
8.3.2.2.21	explains the precautions to be taken to keep liquids out of holds where such cargoes are carried and the danger of using water to cool a shipment of these materials		
8.3.2.2.22	states that specially fitted or constructed cargo ships may carry materials with a moisture content above the transportable moisture limit if approved by their Administrations		
8.3.2.2.23	describes the test for approximately determining the possibility of flow which may be carried out on board ship		
8.3.2.2.24	states that some materials transported in bulk present hazards because of their chemical properties		
8.3.2.2.25	explains that some materials are classified as dangerous goods in the IMDG Code while others are Materials Hazardous only in Bulk (MHB)		
8.3.2.2.26	states that the IMSBC Code categorizes cargoes into three groups - A, B and C: <ul style="list-style-type: none">- Group A consists of the cargoes which may liquefy if shipped with moisture content in excess of their transportable moisture limit- Group B consists of cargoes which possess a chemical hazard which could give rise to a dangerous situation on a ship- Group C consists of cargoes which are not liable to liquefy (Group A) and do not possess chemical hazards (Group B)		
8.3.2.2.27	explains the content and use of the following: that in the added supplement of the IMSBC Code, the IMO documents contained are: <ul style="list-style-type: none">- the BLU Code- the BLU Manual- MSC/Circ.908 - Uniform Method of Measurement of the Density of Bulk Cargoes- MSC/Circ.1146 - Lists of Solid Bulk Cargoes for which a Fixed Gas Fire-extinguishing System may be Exempted or for which a Fixed Gas Fire-extinguishing System is Ineffective- Res. A.864(20) - Recommendations for Entering Enclosed Spaces Aboard Ships- MSC.1/Circ.1264 - Recommendations on the Safe Use of Pesticides in Ships Applicable to the Fumigation of Cargo Holds- BC.1/Circ.66 - Contact Names and Addresses of the Offices of Designated National Competent Authorities Responsible for the Safe Carriage of Grain and Solid Bulk Cargoes		
8.3.2.2.28	explains the list of materials possessing chemical hazards is not exhaustive, that the properties listed are for guidance only and that it is essential to obtain currently valid information about bulk materials before loading		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

8.3.2.2.29	explains the use of the tables for segregation between incompatible bulk materials and between bulk materials and dangerous goods in packaged form		
8.3.2.2.30	states that the IMDG Code should also be consulted for additional requirements regarding the stowage and segregation of packaged dangerous goods		
8.3.2.2.31	states that particular care should be taken with the segregation of toxic substances and foodstuffs		
8.3.2.2.32	uses the IMSBC Code to extract all necessary information for the safe carriage in bulk of a stated cargo, describes how it should be loaded and lists any special precautions or requirements to be observed during loading, carriage and discharge		
8.3.2.3	International Code for the Safe Carriage of Grain in Bulk (International Grain Code)		
8.3.2.3.1	states that the International Grain Code applies to all ships to which the SOLAS regulations apply and to cargo ships of less than 500 gross tons		
8.3.2.3.2	explains that the International Code for the Safe Carriage of Grain in Bulk (International Grain Code) is based on the recognition that grain-like cargoes have a propensity to shift and that even fully loaded cargo spaces may contain voids that allow dangerous cargo shifts		
8.3.2.3.3	defines the following terms as used in chapter VI of SOLAS: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - grain - filled compartment - partly filled compartment - angle of flooding 		
8.3.2.3.4	explains that the Code requires demonstration, by calculation, that at all times during a voyage the ship will have sufficient intact stability to provide adequate dynamic stability after taking into account an assumed shift of cargo		
8.3.2.3.5	states the Code requirements for minimum stability in terms of initial metacentric height, angle of heel due to assumed grain shift and residual dynamic stability ,		
8.3.2.3.6	explains that vessels with appropriate design features may be able to meet the required minimum stability criteria after the assumed movement of cargo without taking further physical precautions to reduce the shift of cargo		
8.3.2.3.7	explains the stability and grain loading information that is required to be provided for such vessels if they are to receive a Document of Authorization		
8.3.2.3.8	explains the method of verifying that the loading of a vessel supplied with a Document of Authorization meets stability requirements using volumetric heeling moments, cargo details and maximum deadweight heeling		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

<p>8.3.2.3.9</p> <p>8.3.2.3.10</p> <p>8.3.2.3.11</p> <p>8.3.2.3.12</p> <p>8.3.2.3.13</p> <p>8.3.2.3.14</p> <p>8.3.2.3.15</p> <p>8.3.2.3.16</p> <p>8.3.2.3.17</p>	<p>moments</p> <p>explains that the grain loading stability booklet and associated plans contain all of the information necessary to check that a proposed loading plan complies with the stability requirements of the Regulations at all stages of the voyage</p> <p>states that in some countries a certificate of loading, certifying that the cargo has been loaded in compliance with the Regulations, is required before sailing</p> <p>explains the importance of trimming to fill all of the spaces under decks and hatch covers to the maximum extent possible</p> <p>states that the ability to comply with the stability criteria should be demonstrated before loading</p> <p>states that the Master should ensure that the ship is upright before proceeding to sea</p> <p>explains the use of physical precautions to reduce cargo movement:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - describes the use and fitting of longitudinal divisions in both filled and partly filled compartments - demonstrates the use of Part C of the Code to determine the scantlings for uprights and shifting boards - describes the construction of a saucer as an alternative to a longitudinal division in a hatchway - describes the use of bagged grain or other suitable cargo stowed in the wings and ends of a compartment to reduce the heeling effects of a grain shift - describes methods of securing the free grain surface in partly filled compartments <p>states that the hatch covers of filled compartments which have no cargo stowed over them should be secured as laid down in the document of authorization</p> <p>explains the conditions which must be met before a ship without a document of authorization may load grain given a ship's data and details of consumption of fuel and of fresh water for an intended voyage, prepares a stowage plan for a cargo of bulk grain and performs the calculations to check that the proposed stowage complies, at all stages of the voyage, with the stability criteria set out in chapter VI of SOLAS 1974</p>		
<p>8.4</p>	<p>Monitor and control compliance with legislative requirements and measures to ensure safety of life at sea, security and the protection of the marine environment</p>		
<p>8.4.1</p> <p>8.4.1.1</p>	<p>Knowledge of international maritime law embodied in international agreements and conventions</p> <p>Responsibilities under the International Convention for the Prevention of Pollution from Ships, as amended</p> <p>Responsibilities under the International Convention for the Prevention of Pollution from Ships, 1973, and</p>		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

	<p>the Protocol of 1978 relating thereto (MARPOL 73/78)</p>		
8.4.1.1.1	<p>explains who may cause proceedings to be taken when a violation occurs within the jurisdiction of a Party to the Convention explains the Parties to the Convention must apply the requirements of the Convention to ships of non-Parties to ensure that no more favourable treatment is given to such ships</p> <p>Annex I — Oil</p>		
8.4.1.1.1.1	states that, after survey has been completed, no change should be made in the structure, equipment, fittings, arrangements or materials without the sanction of the Administration, except the direct replacement of equipment and fittings		
8.4.1.1.1.2	explains the Master's duty to report when an accident occurs or a defect is discovered which substantially affects the integrity of the ship or the efficiency or completeness of its equipment covered by this Annex		
8.4.1.1.1.3	states that the dates of intermediate and annual surveys are endorsed on the IOPP Certificate		
8.4.1.1.1.4	states that a record of construction and equipment is attached as a supplement to the IOPP Certificate		
8.4.1.1.1.5	explains the duration of validity of the IOPP Certificate and the circumstances in which the IOPP Certificate will cease to be valid		
8.4.1.1.1.6	states that all new crude oil tankers of 20,000 tonnes deadweight and above must be fitted with a crude oil washing system		
8.4.1.1.1.7	states that the competent authority of the Government of a Party to the Convention may inspect the Oil Record Book while the ship is in its port or offshore terminals and may make a copy of any entry and may require the Master to certify that the copy is a true copy of such entry		
8.4.1.1.1.8	states that a copy certified by the Master is admissible in any judicial proceedings as evidence of the facts stated in the entry		
8.4.1.1.1.9	states that the Master should be provided with information relative to loading and distribution of cargo necessary to ensure compliance with the regulation on subdivision and stability and the ability of the ship to comply with the damage stability criteria		
8.4.1.1.1.10	states all ships of 400gt or more must carry an approved shipboard oil pollution emergency plan (SOPEP)		
	<p>Annex II — Noxious Liquid Substances in Bulk</p>		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

8.4.1.1.1.11	states the duration of validity of the certificate explains that ships which have been surveyed and certified in accordance with the International Bulk Chemical Code (IBC Code) or the Bulk Chemical Code (BCH Code), as applicable, are deemed to have complied with the regulations regarding survey and certification and do not require to have an International Pollution Prevention Certificate for the Carriage of Noxious Liquid Substances in Bulk		
8.4.1.1.1.12	Annex III — Harmful Substances Carried by Sea in Packaged Forms, or in Freight Containers, Portable Tanks or Tank Wagons		
8.4.1.1.1.13	states that the Master of the ship, or his representative, should notify the appropriate port authority of the intention to load or unload certain harmful substances at least 24 hours in advance Annex IV — Sewage		
8.4.1.1.1.1	defines, for the purposes of Annex IV: - holding tank, sewage and nearest land		
8.4.1.1.1.15	states the ships to which the provisions apply		
8.4.1.1.1.16	states that ships to which the regulations apply are subject to surveys for the issue of an International Sewage Pollution Prevention Certificate (1973)		
8.4.1.1.1.17			
8.4.1.1.1.18	states the duration of validity of the certificate Annex V — Garbage		
8.4.1.1.1.19	explains that when garbage is mixed with other discharges having different disposal requirements, the more stringent requirements apply		
8.4.1.1.1.20	describes the provisions for disposal of garbage from off-shore platforms and from ships alongside or within 500 metres from them		
8.4.1.1.1.21	lists the special areas for the purposes of this annex		
8.4.1.1.1.22	explains the requirements for disposal of garbage within special areas		
8.4.1.1.1.23	describes the exceptions to regulations 3, 4 and 5		
8.4.1.1.1.24	describes the form of record keeping required		
8.4.1.1.1.25	states records are subject to scrutiny by port State control officers		
8.4.1.1.1.26	Annex VI — (Regulations for the Prevention of Air Pollution from Ships) of the MARPOL Convention.		
8.4.1.1.1.27	states that MARPOL 73/78 Annex VI Regulations for the Prevention of Air Pollution from Ships entered into force on 19 May 2005		
8.4.1.1.1.28	states that MARPOL Annex VI sets limits on sulphur oxide and nitrogen oxide emissions from ship exhausts and		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation

No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka

Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

8.4.1.1.1.29	prohibits deliberate emissions of ozone-depleting substances		
8.4.1.1.1.30	explains that Annex VI emission control requirements are in accordance with the 1987 Montreal Protocol (a UN international environmental treaty), as amended in London in 1990		
8.4.1.1.1.31	states that MARPOL annex VI applies to all ships, fixed and floating drilling rigs and other platforms, but the certification requirements are depending on size of the vessel and when it is constructed		
8.4.1.1.1.32	explains the requirements for shipboard energy efficiency plans under MARPOL annex VI		
8.4.1.1.1.32	explains that regulation 16 sets out requirements for shipboard incineration and as per 16(4) bans the incineration of: <ul style="list-style-type: none">- MARPOL Annex I, II and III cargo residues and related contaminated packing materials;- polychlorinated biphenyls (PCBs);- garbage, as defined in MARPOL Annex V, containing more than traces of heavy metals; and- refined petroleum products containing halogen compounds		
8.4.1.1.1.33	explains that under regulation 16(5) incineration of sewage sludge and sludge oil generated during the normal operation of a ship may take place in the main or auxiliary power plant or boilers (as well as in an incinerator), but in those cases, must not take place inside ports, harbours and estuaries		
8.4.1.1.1.34	explains that regulation 16(6) prohibits the shipboard incineration of polyvinyl chlorides (PVCs), except in incinerators for which IMO Type Approval Certificates have been issued		
8.4.1.1.1.35	explains that under regulation 16(7) all ships with incinerators subject to regulation 16 must possess a manufacturer's operating manual which must specify how to operate the incinerator within the limits described in paragraph 2 of appendix IV to Annex VI		
8.4.1.1.1.36	explains that under regulation 16(8) personnel responsible for operation of any incinerator must be trained and capable of implementing the guidance in the manufacturer's operating manual		
8.4.1.1.1.37	explains that regulation 3 provides that the regulations of Annex VI will not apply to any emission necessary for the purpose of securing the safety of a ship or saving life at sea, or any emission resulting from damage to a ship or its equipment, subject to certain conditions		
8.4.1.1.1.38	states that regulation 15 provides that in ports or terminals in Party States any regulation of emissions of Volatile Organic Compounds (VOCs) from tankers must be in accordance with Annex VI		
8.4.1.1.1.39	states that as per regulation 15a tanker carrying crude oil is required to have a "VOC Management Plan" approved by the Administration on board		
8.4.1.1.1.40	states that ships of 400 gross tons and above engaged in international voyages involving countries that have ratified the conventions, or ships flying the flag of those countries, are required to have an International Air Pollution Prevention Certificate (IAPP Certificate)		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation

No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka

Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

8.4.1.1.1.41	states that the IAPP certificate will be issued following an initial survey carried out by the flag Administration or by a recognized organization on behalf of the flag Administration, confirming compliance with MARPOL Annex VI. For ships with the flag of an Administration that have not yet ratified Annex VI, a Certificate of Compliance with Annex VI may be issued		
8.4.1.1.1.42	states that Annex VI also requires diesel engines with a power output of more than 130 kW which is installed on a ship constructed on or after 1 January 2000 or with a power output of more than 130 kW which undergoes a major conversion on or after 1 January 2000 or with a power output of more than 5000 kW and a per cylinder displacement at or above 90 litres which is installed on a ship constructed on or after 1 January 1990 but prior to 1 January 2000, to carry individual certificates with regard to NOx emissions, named Engine International Air Pollution Prevention (EIAPP) Certificates		
8.4.1.1.1.43	states that Annex VI requires that every ship of 400 gross tonnage or above and every fixed and floating drilling rig and other platforms shall be subject to a schedule of surveys that occur throughout the life of a vessel		
8.4.1.1.1.44	states that the schedule of surveys include: <ul style="list-style-type: none">- Initial survey: This survey occurs before the ship is put into service or before a vessel certificate is issued for the first time. This survey ensures that the equipment, systems, fitting, arrangements and material used on board fully comply with the requirements of Annex VI. The vessel's International Air Pollution Prevention certificate (IAPP) will be issued to the vessel by an organization authorized to act on behalf of the State, after this survey.- Periodic surveys: These surveys occur at least every five years after the initial survey. These surveys confirm that nothing has been done to the ship's equipment that would take it out of compliance. The vessel's IAPP certificate will be re-issued by an organization authorized to act on behalf of the State, after this survey.- Intermediate surveys: These surveys occur at least once during the period between issuance of an IAPP and the periodic surveys. They also confirm that all of the ship's equipment remains in compliance.		
8.4.1.1.1.45	states that chapter III of Annex VI (regulations 12 to 19) contains requirements for control of emissions from ships, but the following regulations directly impact vessel operation: <ul style="list-style-type: none">- regulation 12 - Ozone-depleting Substances- regulation 13 - NOx emissions- regulation 14 - Sulphur Oxide emissions- regulation 15 - VOC emissions		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation

No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka

Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - regulation 16 - Shipboard Incinerators - regulation 18 - Fuel Oil Quality control 		
8.4.1.1.1.46	states that regulation 12(1) prohibits deliberate emissions of ozone-depleting substances, except where necessary for the purpose of securing the safety of a ship or saving life, as provided in regulation 3		
8.4.1.1.1.47	states that regulation 12(2) prohibits, on all ships, new installations containing ozone-depleting substances, except that new installations containing hydrochlorofluorocarbons (HCFCs) are permitted until 1 January 2020		
8.4.1.1.1.48	states that all the ships subject to the requirements of Annex VI, are required to maintain a list of equipment containing ozone-depleting substances and, if a ship has rechargeable systems, containing ozone-depleting		
8.4.1.1.1.49	substances, an Ozone-depleting Substances Record Book is to be maintained on board		
8.4.1.1.1.50	states that regulation 13 sets NOx emission limits for diesel engines with a power output of more than 130kW installed on ships built on or after 1 January 2000, and diesel engines of similar power undergoing a major conversion on or after 1 January 2000		
8.4.1.1.1.51	states that regulation 13 does not apply to emergency diesel engines, engines installed in lifeboats and any device or equipment intended to be used solely in case of emergency, or engines installed on ships solely engaged in voyages within waters subject to the sovereignty or jurisdiction of the flag State, provided that such engines are subject to an alternative NOx control measure established by the Administration		
8.4.1.1.1.52	explains that regulation 13 further contains a 3-Tier approach:		
8.4.1.1.1.53	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Tier I (current limits) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ For diesel engines installed on ships constructed from 1 January 2000 to 1 January 2011 - Tier II <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ For diesel engines installed on ships constructed on or after 1 January 2011 - Tier III <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Ships constructed on or after 1 January 2016 		
8.4.1.1.1.54	states that Engine surveys are described in Chapter 2 of the NOx Technical Code, a supporting document to Annex VI		
8.4.1.1.1.55	states that the four kinds of engine surveys are:		
8.4.1.1.1.56	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Pre-certification survey: This survey occurs before an engine is installed on board a vessel, to ensure the engine meets the NOx limits. The Engine International Air Pollution Prevention certificate (EIAPP) is issued after this survey for each applicable engine, engine family, or engine group 		
8.4.1.1.1.57	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Initial certification survey: This survey occurs after the engine is installed on board the ship, but before the ship is placed into service. It ensures that 		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation

No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka

Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

<p>8.4.1.1.1.54</p> <p>8.4.1.1.1.55</p> <p>8.4.1.1.1.56</p> <p>8.4.1.1.1.57</p> <p>8.4.1.1.1.58</p> <p>8.4.1.1.1.59</p> <p>8.4.1.1.1.60</p> <p>8.4.1.1.1.61</p> <p>8.4.1.1.1.62</p>	<p>the engine meets the NOx limits as installed. If an engine has an EIAPP, the initial certification survey will primarily ensure that any modifications to the engine's settings are within the allowable adjustment limits specified in the EIAPP</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Periodic and intermediate surveys: These surveys occur as part of the ship's surveys described above. They ensure that the engine continues to comply fully with the NOx limits - Modification survey: This survey occurs when an engine overhaul meets the criteria for a major conversion. It ensures that the modified engine complies with the NOx limits <p>states that there are three documents that are essential for completing the engine and vessel surveys. These are the EIAPP or Statement of Compliance, the Technical File, and the Record Book of Engine Parameters</p> <p>states that regulation 14 provides for adoption of "SOx Emission Control Areas" - "SECA" where the adoption of special mandatory measures for SOx emissions from ships is required to prevent, reduce and control air pollution from SOx and its attendant adverse impacts on land and sea areas with more stringent control on sulphur emissions</p> <p>states for the purpose of the regulation, Emission Control Areas (ECA) includes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - The Baltic Sea area as defined in regulation 1.11.2 of Annex I, the North Sea as defined in regulation 5(1)(f) of Annex V <p>states that in these areas the sulphur content of fuel oil used on ships must not exceed 1.5% m/m. Alternatively, ships in these areas must fit an exhaust gas cleaning system or use any other technological method to limit SOx emissions</p> <p>states that regulation 15 provides that in ports or terminals in Party States any regulation of emissions of Volatile Organic Compounds (VOCs) from tankers must be in accordance with Annex VI</p> <p>explains that regulation 16 sets out requirements for shipboard incineration and as per 16(4) bans the incineration of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - MARPOL Annex I, II and III cargo residues and related contaminated packing materials; - polychlorinated biphenyls (PCBs); - garbage, as defined in MARPOL Annex V, containing more than traces of heavy metals; and - refined petroleum products containing halogen compounds <p>explains that under regulation 16(5) incineration of sewage sludge and sludge oil generated during the normal operation of a ship may take place in the main or auxiliary power plant or boilers (as well as in an incinerator), but in those cases, must not take place inside ports, harbours and estuaries</p> <p>explains that regulation 16(6) prohibits the shipboard incineration of polyvinyl chlorides (PVCs), except in incinerators for which IMO Type Approval Certificates have been issued</p>		
---	---	--	--



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

8.4.1.1.1.63	explains that under regulation 16(7) all ships with incinerators subject to regulation 16 must possess a manufacturer's operating manual which must specify how to operate the incinerator within the limits described in paragraph 2 of appendix IV to Annex VI		
8.4.1.1.1.64	explains that under regulation 16(8) personnel responsible for operation of any incinerator must be trained and capable of implementing the guidance in the manufacturer's operating manual		
8.4.1.1.1.65	states that as per regulation 15 a tanker carrying crude oil is required to have a "VOC Management Plan" approved by the Administration on board explains that regulation 3 provides that the regulations of Annex VI will not apply to any emission necessary for the purpose of securing the safety of a ship or saving life at sea, or any emission resulting from damage to a ship or its equipment, subject to certain conditions		
8.4.2	<p>Responsibilities under international instruments affecting the safety of the ship, passengers, crew and cargo</p> <p>Ballast water Convention 2004</p> <p>8.4.2.1 defines the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - ballast water <p>8.4.2.1.1</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - ballast water management - sediments <p>8.4.2.1.2 describes the application of this convention</p> <p>8.4.2.1.3 describes the conditions where the application of this convention may be exempted</p> <p>8.4.2.1.4 describes the management and control requirement based on section B, regulation B1 to B6</p> <p>8.4.2.1.5 describes the annex - section A, B, C, D and E briefly</p> <p>8.4.2.1.6 describes the standards that need to be observed in ballast water exchange</p> <p>8.4.2.1.7 states under regulation B-4 Ballast Water Exchange, all ships using ballast water exchange should:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - whenever possible, conduct ballast water exchange at least 200 nautical miles from the nearest land and in water at least 200 metres in depth, taking into account Guidelines developed by IMO; - in cases where the ship is unable to conduct ballast water exchange as above, this should be as far from the nearest land as possible, and in all cases at least 50 nautical miles from the nearest land and in water at least 200 metres in depth <p>8.4.2.1.8 states as per annex - section B Management and Control Requirements for Ships:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - ships are required to have on board and implement a Ballast Water Management Plan approved by the Administration (regulation B-1). The Ballast Water Management Plan is specific to each ship and includes 		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

<p>8.4.2.1.9</p> <p>8.4.2.1.10</p> <p>8.4.2.1.11</p> <p>8.4.2.1.12</p> <p>8.4.2.1.13</p> <p>8.4.2.1.14</p> <p>8.4.2.1.15</p> <p>8.4.2.1.16</p>	<p>a detailed description of the actions to be taken to implement the Ballast Water Management requirements and supplemental Ballast Water Management practices</p> <p>states that a new paragraph, 4, has been added with effect from July 1,2010 to SOLAS chapter V, regulation 22 - Navigation bridge visibility. Some changes are operational and others introduce new requirements applicable to navigation records</p> <p>states that as a consequence of this amendment, any increase in blind sectors or reduction in horizontal fields of vision resulting from ballast water exchange operations is to be taken into account by the Master before determining that it is safe to proceed with the exchange</p> <p>states that as an additional measure, to compensate for possible increased blind sectors or reduced horizontal fields of vision, the Master must ensure that a proper lookout is maintained at all times during the exchange. Ballast water exchange must be conducted in accordance with the ship's ballast water management plan, taking into account the recommendations adopted by the IMO'</p> <p>explains that in accordance with SOLAS chapter V, regulation 28 - Records of navigational activities and daily reporting, the commencement and termination of the operation should be recorded</p> <p>explains that the navigational records generated during ballast water exchange may be reviewed during ISM Audits and port State control inspections</p> <p>Port State control</p> <p>explains that "port State control" is the inspection of foreign ships present in a nation's ports for the purpose of verifying that the condition of the ships and their equipment comply with the provisions of international conventions and codes, and that the ships are manned and operated in compliance with those provisions</p> <p>explains that the primary responsibility for maintaining ships' standards rests with their flag States, as well as their owners and Masters. However, many flag States do not, for various reasons, fulfil their obligations under international maritime conventions, and port State control provides a useful "safety net" to catch substandard ships</p> <p>states that a "port State control regime", where set up under a "memorandum of understanding" ("MOU") or similar accord between neighbouring port States, is a system of harmonized inspection procedures designed to target substandard ships with the main objective being their eventual elimination from the region covered by the MOU's participating States</p> <p>states that there are eight international PSC agreements currently in force worldwide</p>		
--	--	--	--



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

8.4.2.1.17	<p>identifies how to ascertain which port State agreement a particular port State might be party to and any areas of particular focus that may currently be in place</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">- outlines that the list of certificates and documents which are checked during the inspection are:- International Tonnage Certificate (1969);- Passenger Ship Safety Certificate;- Cargo Ship Safety Construction Certificate;- Cargo Ship Safety Equipment Certificate;- Cargo Ship Safety Radio Certificate;- Exemption Certificate;- Cargo Ship Safety Certificate;- Document of Compliance (SOLAS 74, regulation II-2/54);- Dangerous Goods Special List or Manifest, or Detailed Stowage Plan;- International Certificate of Fitness for the Carriage of Liquefied Gases in Bulk, or the Certificate of Fitness for the Carriage of Liquefied Gases in Bulk, whichever is appropriate;- International Certificate of Fitness for the Carriage of Dangerous Chemicals in Bulk, or the Certificate of Fitness for the Carriage of Dangerous Chemicals in Bulk, whichever is appropriate;- International Oil Pollution Prevention Certificate;- International Pollution Prevention Certificate for the Carriage of Noxious Liquid Substances in Bulk;- International Load Line Certificate (1966);- International Load Line Exemption Certificate;- Oil Record Book, parts I and II;- Shipboard Oil Pollution Emergency Plan;- Cargo Record Book;- Minimum Safe Manning Document;- Certificates of Competency;- Medical certificates (MLC and STCW);- Stability information;- Safety Management Certificate and copy of Document of Compliance (SOLAS chapter IX);		
------------	---	--	--



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation

No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

8.4.2.1.18	<ul style="list-style-type: none">- Certificates as to the ship's hull strength and machinery installations issued by the classification society in question (only to be required if the ship maintains its class with a classification society);- Survey Report Files (in case of bulk carriers or oil tankers in accordance with resolution A.744(18));- For ro-ro passenger ships, information on the A/A max ratio;- Document of authorization for the carriage of grain;- Special Purpose Ship Safety Certificate;- High-Speed Craft Safety Certificate and Permit to Operate High-Speed Craft;- Mobile Offshore Drilling Unit Safety Certificate;- For oil tankers, the record of oil discharge monitoring and control system for the last ballast voyage;- The muster list, fire control plan and damage control plan;- Ship's logbook with respect to the records of tests and drills and the log for records of inspection and maintenance of life-saving appliances and arrangements;- Procedures and Arrangements Manual (chemical tankers);- Cargo Securing Manual;- Certificate of Registry or other document of nationality;- Garbage Management Plan;- Garbage Record Book;- Bulk carrier booklet (SOLAS chapter VI regulation 7); and- Reports of previous port State control inspections <p>outlines that in addition to the general control of above listed certificates and documents, examinations/inspections of the following are generally given priority by Port State Control Officer (PSCO):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">- Nautical publication (SOLAS 74 R V/20)- Navigational equipment (SOLAS 74 R V/12 and 19)- Emergency starting and running tests (SOLAS 74 R II-2 - 4.3)- Lifesaving equipment. Rafts FF (SOLAS 74 R III/20, 23, 26 and 29)- Emergency Generator (start/stop only) (SOLAS 74 R 11-1/42 & 43)- Hull corrosion and damages (Load Lines) (SOLAS 74 R 1/11)		
------------	--	--	--



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation

No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Main engine & aux. engines (SOLAS 74 R II/26, 27 & 28) - Oily water separator 15 ppm alarm (MARPOL Annex I/16(1)) - Oil discharge monitor (ODM) (MARPOL Annex I/16) - Charts corrected and proper scale (SOLAS 74 R V/20) - Fire safety Control plan (SOLAS 74 R II-2/20) - Ventilation inlets/outlets (SOLAS 74 R II-2/16.9 & 48) - Emergency training and drills (Log book rec. SOLAS 74 R III/18) - Emergency lighting/batteries (SOLAS 74 R II/42 & 43) - Deck and hatches corrosion and damages (LL 1966) - Steering gear - incl. auxiliary & emergency (Bridge inspection only - SOLAS 74 R V/19) - Cleanliness in engine room (SOLAS 74 R II-1/26 and ILO 134) - Cleanliness in accommodation (ILO 92 & 133) <p>explains that the port State control inspections may be conducted on the following basis:</p>		
8.4.2.1.19	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - initiative of the port State Administration; - the request of, or on the basis of, information regarding a ship provided by another Administration; - information regarding a ship provided by a member of the crew, a professional body, an association, a trade union or any other individual with an interest in the safety of the ship, its crew and passengers, or the protection of the marine environment <p>explains that the PSC inspections may be on random, targeted or periodical basis. The following types of PSC inspections are used in PSC:</p>		
8.4.2.1.20	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Initial inspection (random) - More detailed inspection (escalated) - Expanded inspection (targeted/periodical) <p>states that the definition of inspection is: “A visit on board a ship to check both the validity of the relevant certificates and other documents, and the overall</p>		
8.4.2.1.21	<p>condition of the ship, its equipment, and its crew”</p>		
8.4.2.1.22	<p>explains that the certificates and documents listed above should therefore be readily available and presented to the PSCO at his request during the PSC inspection</p> <p>states that the definition of more detailed inspection is: “An inspection conducted when there are clear grounds for believing that the condition of the ship, its equipment, or its crew does not correspond substantially with the</p>		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

8.4.2.1.23	particulars of the certificates”		
8.4.2.1.24	states that the definition of Clear grounds is: “Evidence that the ship, its equipment, or its crew does not correspond substantially with the requirements of the relevant conventions or that the Master or crew members are not familiar with essential shipboard procedures relating to the safety of ships or the prevention of pollution”		
8.4.2.1.25	outlines that “Clear grounds” to conduct a more detailed inspection include: - the absence of principal equipment or arrangements required by the conventions; - evidence from a review of the ship’s certificates that a certificate or certificates are clearly invalid; - evidence that documentation required by the conventions are not on board, incomplete, are not maintained or are falsely maintained;		
8.4.2.1.26	evidence from the PSCO’s general impressions and observations that serious hull or structural deterioration or deficiencies exist that may place at risk the structural, watertight or weathertight integrity of the ship;		
8.4.2.1.27	evidence from the PSCO’s general impressions or observations that serious deficiencies exist in the safety, pollution prevention or navigational equipment;		
8.4.2.1.28	information or evidence that the Master or crew is not familiar with essential shipboard operations relating to the safety of ships or the prevention of pollution, or that such operations have not been carried out; indications that key crew members may not be able to communicate with each other or with other persons on board; the emission of false distress alerts not followed by proper cancellation procedures; receipt of a report or complaint containing information that a ship appears to be substandard		
8.4.2.1.29	explains that the PSCO during a more detailed inspection generally takes the following into account: - structure; - machinery spaces; - conditions of assignment of load lines; - life-saving appliances; - fire safety; - regulations for preventing collisions at sea; - Cargo Ship Safety Construction Certificate; - Cargo Ship Safety Radio Certificates; - equipment in excess of convention or flag State requirements; - guidelines for discharge requirements under Annexes I and III of MARPOL 73/78 which includes:		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • inspection of crude oil washing (COW) operations; • inspection of unloading, stripping and prewash operations; • guidelines for control of operational requirements - which include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ muster list; ➤ communication; ➤ fire drills; ➤ abandon ship drills; ➤ damage control plan and Shipboard Oil Pollution Emergency Plan; ➤ fire control plan; ➤ bridge operation; ➤ cargo operation; ➤ operation of the machinery; ➤ manuals, instructions etc.; ➤ oil and oily mixtures from machinery spaces; ➤ loading, unloading and cleaning procedures for cargo spaces of tankers; ➤ dangerous goods and harmful substances in packaged form; ➤ garbage; - minimum manning standards and certification; - STCW 78; - ISM; and - ISPS Code 		
8.4.2.1.30	states that expanded inspection is an inspection conducted according to non-mandatory guidelines only once during 12 month period for certain types of ships and certain categories of age and size		
8.4.2.1.31	<p>explains that oil tankers, bulk carriers, gas and chemical carriers and passenger ships are subject to expanded inspections once during a period of 12 months</p> <p>outlines the IMO RESOLUTIONS pertaining to Port State Controls are as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - A.9/Res.321 Procedures for the control of ships 12/11/1975 - A.12/Res.466 Procedures of port state control 19/11/1981 - A.15/Res.597 Amendments to the procedures for the control of ships 19/11/1987 - A.19/Res.787 Procedures for port state control 23/11/1995 - A 21/Res.882 Amendments to the procedures for port state control (resolution A.787(19)) 		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation

No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka

Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@sltnet.lk

	25/11/1999		
8.4.2.1.32	states that the publication by IMO which gives the General Procedural Guidelines for Port State Control Officers are also of particular relevance to shipmaster		
8.4.2.1.33	explains that a record of port State control inspections including safety-related details of many ships is available on the internet from the Equasis database and may be viewed by any member of the public		
8.4.2.1.34	explains that Equasis forms part of the Quality Shipping campaign launched by the EU in 1997 which is formally supported by signatories from marine Administrations, classification societies, P&I clubs and the ITF		
8.4.2.1.35	explains that more than 40 organizations provide information to Equasis and is used heavily by charterers and insurers as well as marine Administrations with port State control functions		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

09. Navigation (Total number of hours - 126)

Ref. No	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Duration	Course Notes ref. no
9.1	Plan a voyage and conduct navigation		
9.1.1	Voyage planning and navigation for all conditions by acceptable methods of plotting ocean tracks		
9.1.1.1	Voyage planning for all conditions		
9.1.1.1.1	determines key parameters for the voyage to be planned and briefs officers appropriately fully appraises all information that may be relevant to the voyage, including information from: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Routeing and pilot charts - <i>Ocean Passages for the World</i> - Sailing Directions - Charts - IMO Routeing Guide - Lists of Lights - Lists of Radio Signals - Tidal and Tidal Stream Information - Load line, insurance and charter party parameters - Port Information - Notices to Mariners - Navigation Warnings - Meteorological information - Vessel condition, draught, trim and handling characteristics 		
9.1.1.1.2	plans voyages from berth to berth using appropriate strategies and contingency plans in order to deal with various factors, such as: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - encountering restricted visibility - expected meteorological conditions - navigational hazards and no go areas - making landfall - accuracy of position fixing required in critical areas - encountering or navigating in ice 		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

<p>9.1.1.1.3</p> <p>9.1.1.1.4</p> <p>9.1.1.1.5</p> <p>9.1.1.1.6</p> <p>9.1.1.1.7</p> <p>9.1.1.1.8</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - areas of restricted/confined/pilotage waters - traffic separation schemes en route <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - expected traffic density - operational requirements in terms of passage time and fuel consumption - areas of extensive tidal effects - ensuring adequate fuel, water and provisions - ensuring the safety of the personnel, property and the environment - ship reporting requirements in vessel traffic service (VTS) and other reporting areas - vessel condition, draught, trim and handling characteristics <p>ensures that charts, course cards and other voyage planning documentation, i.e. navigation notebooks etc. accurately detail the plan and are prepared in accordance with industry practice including ECDIS where appropriate</p> <p>ensures that positions, distances and ETAs or average speed required calculations completed using mercator sailing, great circle sailing, composite great circle sailing and limited latitude sailing are accurate</p> <p>ensures that there is adequate fuel, water and provisions on board for the voyage</p> <p>ensures that all watchkeeping officers are fully briefed and familiar with the voyage plan</p> <p>ensures that watchkeeping officers understand the circumstances in which they may deviate from the initial plan and the requirement to update the plan where this occurs</p>		
<p>9.1.1.2</p> <p>9.1.1.2.1</p> <p>9.1.1.2.2</p>	<p>Navigation and monitoring of the voyage</p> <p>plans and establishes parameters and guidance to watchkeeping officers to ensure that the navigation and monitoring of the voyage is appropriate for the area being navigated, with particular regard to navigation in areas of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - restricted waters - meteorological conditions - ice - restricted visibility - traffic separation schemes - vessel traffic service (VTS) areas - areas of extensive tidal effects <p>ensures that the vessel's position is monitored using two or more independent position determination systems appropriate to the area</p>		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

9.1.1.2.3	ensures that the vessel's position is determined at appropriate intervals and monitored continuously		
9.1.1.2.4	ensures that the execution of the voyage plan is monitored and that any required alterations are appraised, evaluated and approved where these are outside the authority of the watchkeeping officer		
9.1.1.3	Logbooks and voyage records		
9.1.1.3.1	ensures that proper log and voyage records are maintained in accordance with maritime shipping acts and other laws and regulations		
9.1.2	Routeing in accordance with the General Provisions on Ships' Routeing		
9.1.2.1.1	Routeing		
9.1.2.1.2	selects ocean and coastal routes that appropriately consider: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - mandatory or recommended requirements including the IMO Routeing Guide - distance - average passage speed and fuel consumption - availability of position monitoring - safety of life, property and the environment selects appropriate routes using: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - weather routeing information received from shore-based providers - weather routeing techniques using synoptic and prognosis information observed and received from ashore 		
9.1.3	Reporting in accordance with the General principles for Ship Reporting Systems and with VTS procedures		
9.1.3.1	Ship reporting systems		
9.1.3.1.1	explains the general principles for various ship reporting systems		
9.1.3.1.2	explains the general principles for reporting as per VTS procedures		
9.1.3.1.3	determines the reporting requirements for particular reporting and VTS systems		
9.1.3.1.4	explains the use of AIS within reporting systems		
9.1.3.1.5	makes reports in accordance with published procedures and criteria		
9.2	Determine position and the accuracy of resultant position fix by any means		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

9.2.1	Position determination in all conditions:		
9.2.1.1	by celestial observations		
9.2.1.1.1	determines parameters for position monitoring on ocean passages using celestial observations of the sun and stars uses appropriate techniques, frequency and is completed accurately		
9.2.1.1.2	verifies that celestial techniques are correctly applied by watchkeeping officers		
9.2.1.1.3	provides guidance and support to cadets and watchkeeping officers in the correct application of celestial techniques		
9.2.1.1.4	assesses the accuracy of position monitoring using celestial techniques		
9.2.1.2	by terrestrial observations, including the ability to use appropriate charts, notices to mariners and other publications to assess the accuracy of the resulting position fix		
9.2.1.2.1	selects and applies the most appropriate techniques for position monitoring using terrestrial observations in any area being navigated		
9.2.1.2.2	verifies that the position is determined at appropriate frequencies and monitored continuously using terrestrial observations and techniques where these are possible		
9.2.1.2.3	provides guidance and support to cadets and watchkeeping officers in the correct application of terrestrial position fixing techniques		
9.2.1.2.4	assesses the accuracy of position monitoring using terrestrial techniques, particularly considering: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - the limitations and errors of the technique used - information from charts, notices to mariners and other publications 		
9.2.1.2.5	ensures charts and publications are up to date		
9.4	Establish watchkeeping arrangements and procedures		
9.3.1	Thorough knowledge of the content, application and intent of the Principles to be observed in keeping a navigational watch		
9.3.1.1	determines appropriate watchkeeping arrangements that are adequate for maintaining safe watchkeeping, taking into account the prevailing circumstances and conditions		
9.3.1.2	determines the appropriate composition of the watch for differing situations		
9.3.1.3	determines and posts watch schedules that ensure that rest periods are observed and that watchkeepers are fit for duty for operational conditions		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

9.3.1.4	ensures that the responsibilities and expected actions of the Master when in charge of the navigational watch and the officer of the watch at other times are consistent with the Principles outlined in the STCW Code and that these are clearly understood by these officers, including: <ul style="list-style-type: none">- calling the Master- expectation of action until the Master formally takes control of the watch- physical presence on the bridge- maintaining an effective lookout- not undertaking any duties that interfere with watchkeeping- determining if there is risk of collision and the correct application of Colreg- monitoring and adjusting the vessel position in accordance with the voyage plan- knowing the handling characteristics of their ship, including its stopping distances- using the helm, engines and sound signalling apparatus- familiarization and operational use of all bridge equipment, charts, and publications- checks and tests- actions expected when encountering restricted visibility or distress situations- actions when pilots are embarked- actions when there is any doubt		
9.3.1.5	prepares standing orders for watchkeeping at anchor or under way		
9.3.1.6	ensures that an appropriate lookout is maintained at all times		
9.3.1.7	states that watch schedules must be posted and accessible		
9.3.1.8	states the contents of the STCW Code, section A-VIII/2, part 4-1 Principles to be observed in keeping a navigational watch		
9.3.1.9	states that watch duties should be so arranged to comply with rest periods prescribed in the STCW Code, chapter VIII Standards regarding watchkeeping, section A-VIII/1 Fitness for duty		
9.3.1.10	states that the officer in charge of the navigational watch is the Master's representative and is primarily responsible at all times for the safe navigation of the ship and for complying with the International Regulations for Preventing Collisions at Sea, 1972, as amended.		
9.3.1.11	states that officers in charge of the navigational watch under the Master's general direction are responsible for navigating the ship safely during their periods of duty, when they should be physically present on the navigating bridge or in a directly associated location such as the chartroom or bridge control room at all times		
9.3.1.12	states that the Master, chief engineer officer and officer in charge of watch duties should maintain a proper		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation

No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

	watch, making the most effective use of the resources available, such as information, installations/equipment and other personnel		
9.3.1.13	states that the lookout must be able to give full attention to the keeping of a proper lookout and that no other duties should be undertaken or assigned which could interfere with that task		
9.3.1.14	states that the duties of the lookout and helmsperson are separate and that the helmsperson should not be considered to be the lookout while steering, except in small ships where an unobstructed all-round view is provided at the steering position and there is no impairment of night vision or other impediment to the keeping of a proper lookout		
9.3.1.15	lists all factors to be considered to decide if the officer in charge of the navigational watch can be the sole lookout in daylight		
9.3.1.16	lists all relevant factors to be taken into account by the Master in determining that the composition of the navigational watch is adequate to ensure that a proper lookout can continuously be maintained, including those described in the STCW Code		
8.3.1.17	outlines all factors to be taken into account when deciding the composition of the watch on the bridge, which may include appropriately qualified ratings		
9.3.1.18	states that the officer in charge of the navigational watch should: <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. keep the watch on the bridge;2. in no circumstances leave the bridge until properly relieved; and3. continue to be responsible for the safe navigation of the ship, despite the presence of the Master on the bridge, until informed specifically that the Master has assumed that responsibility and this is mutually understood		
9.3.1.19	states that the officer in charge of the navigational watch should not be assigned or undertake any duties which will interfere with the safe navigation of the ship		
9.3.1.20	states that in cases of need, the officer in charge of the navigational watch should not hesitate to use the helm, engines and sound signalling apparatus. However, timely notice of intended variations of engine speed should be given where possible or effective use should be made of UMS engine controls provided on the bridge in accordance with the applicable procedures		
9.3.1.21	states that the officers of the navigational watch should know the handling characteristics of their ship, including its stopping distances, and should appreciate that other ships may have different handling characteristics		
9.3.1.22	states that the officer in charge of the navigational watch should make sure that a proper lookout is maintained at all times		
9.3.1.23	states that in a ship with a separate chartroom, the officer in charge of the navigational watch may visit the		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation

No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka

Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

9.3.1.24	chartroom, when essential, for a short period for the necessary performance of navigational duties, but should first ensure that it is safe to do so and that proper lookout is maintained lists all the checks that should be carried out during the navigational watch by the officer in charge of the navigational watch		
9.3.1.25	states that the officers of the navigational watch should be thoroughly familiar with the use of all electronic navigational aids carried, including their capabilities and limitations, and should use each of these aids when appropriate and should bear in mind that the echo-sounder is a valuable navigational aid		
9.3.1.26	states that whenever restricted visibility is encountered or expected, the officer in charge of the navigational watch should use the radar, and at all times in congested waters, having due regard to its limitations		
9.3.1.27	lists all the circumstances when the officer in charge of the navigational watch should notify the Master immediately, which are: <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. if restricted visibility is encountered or expected;2. if the traffic conditions or the movements of other ships are causing concern;3. if difficulty is experienced in maintaining course;4. on failure to sight land, or a navigation mark or to obtain soundings by the expected time;5. if, unexpectedly, land or a navigation mark is sighted or a change in soundings occurs;6. on breakdown of the engines, propulsion machinery remote control, steering gear or any essential navigational equipment, alarm or indicator;7. if the radio equipment malfunctions;8. in heavy weather, if in any doubt about the possibility of weather damage;9. if the ship meets any hazard to navigation, such as ice or a derelict; and10. in any other emergency or if in any doubt		
9.3.1.28	states that the officer in charge of the navigational watch should not hesitate to take immediate action for the safety of the ship, where circumstances so require, despite notifying the Master immediately in the circumstances considered important for his presence on the bridge		
9.3.1.29	states that the officer in charge of the navigational watch should give watchkeeping personnel all appropriate instructions and information which will ensure the keeping of a safe watch, including a proper lookout		
9.3.1.30	states that in clear weather the officer in charge of the navigational watch should take frequent and accurate compass bearings of approaching ships as a means of early detection of risk of collision and should bear in mind		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

9.3.1.31	that such risk may sometimes exist even when an appreciable bearing change is evident, particularly when approaching a very large ship or a tow or when approaching a ship at close range states that the officer in charge of the navigational watch should also take early and positive action in compliance with the applicable International Regulations for Preventing Collisions at Sea, 1972, as amended and subsequently check that such action is having the desired effect		
9.3.1.32	states that when restricted visibility is encountered or expected, the first responsibility of the officer in charge of the navigational watch is to comply with the relevant rules of the International Regulations for Preventing Collisions at Sea, 1972, as amended with particular regard to the sounding of fog signals, proceeding at a safe speed and having the engines ready for immediate manoeuvre		
9.3.1.33	states that in addition to the above, the officer in charge of the navigational watch shall: <ul style="list-style-type: none">- inform the Master;- post a proper lookout;- exhibit navigation lights; and- operate and use the radar		
9.3.1.34	states that when arranging lookout duty, in hours of darkness, the Master and the officer in charge of the navigational watch should have due regard to the bridge equipment and navigational aids available for use, their limitations, procedures and safeguards implemented		
9.3.1.35	states that in coastal and congested waters the largest scale chart on board, suitable for the area and corrected with the latest available information, should be used		
9.3.1.36	states that fixes in coastal and congested waters should be taken at frequent intervals, and should be carried out by more than one method whenever circumstances allow		
9.3.1.37	states that when using ECDIS, in coastal and congested waters, appropriate scale of electronic navigational charts should be used and the ship's position should be checked by an independent means of position fixing at appropriate intervals		
9.3.1.38	states that in coastal and congested waters the officer in charge of the navigational watch should positively identify all relevant navigation marks		
9.3.1.39	states that when navigating with pilot on board, despite the duties and obligations of pilots, their presence on board does not relieve the Master or the officer in charge of the navigational watch from their duties and obligations for the safety of the ship		
9.3.1.40	states that when navigating with pilot on board, the Master and the pilot should exchange information regarding navigation procedures, local conditions and the ship's characteristics		
9.3.1.41	states that when navigating with pilot on board, the Master and/or the officer in charge of the navigational watch		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

9.3.1.42	should cooperate closely with the pilot and maintain an accurate check on the ship's position and movement states that when navigating with pilot on board, if in any doubt as to the pilot's actions or intentions, the officer in charge of the navigational watch should seek clarification from the pilot and, if doubt still exists, should notify the Master immediately and take whatever action is necessary before the Master arrives		
9.4	Forecast weather and oceanographic conditions		
9.4.1	Knowledge of the characteristics of various weather systems, including tropical revolving storms and avoidance of storm centres and the dangerous quadrants		
9.4.1.1	Guiding principles relating to the safety of navigation in ice		
9.4.1.1.1	states the signs which may indicate the proximity of ice on clear days and nights		
9.4.1.1.2	defines the ranges at which observers may expect to detect ice visually in varying conditions of visibility, see T61		
9.4.1.1.3	discusses the limitations of radar as a means of detecting ice		
9.4.1.1.4	states the precautions to be taken when navigating near ice, and when ice is suspected in the vicinity		
9.4.2	Ability to calculate tidal conditions		
9.4.2.1	explains the non-astronomical component of sea level		
9.4.2.2	explains other irregularities of the tide		
9.4.2.3	states that the predicted tide level is not an accurate value		
9.4.2.4	demonstrates the use of tide tables		
9.4.2.5	determines height and time for high and low water in secondary ports		
9.4.2.6	determines the predicted height of water at a given time in a tabulated port		
9.4.2.7	determines the predicted time for a given tide level		
9.4.2.8	demonstrates the use of tidal stream charts		
9.4.2.9	defines the zero level of the charts		
9.4.2.10	evaluates qualitatively the effect of high or low atmospheric pressure on tide levels		
9.4.2.11	evaluates qualitatively the effect of persistent winds on tide levels and tidal times		
9.4.2.12	evaluates qualitatively the effect of abrupt changes of weather conditions on tidal levels		
9.4.2.13	describes seismic waves, their origin and areas of prevalence		
9.4.2.14	demonstrates use of computer program to obtain tidal information		
9.4.2.15	explains briefly the use of harmonic constant method of tidal prediction		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

9.4.2.16	explains the reliability of tidal predictions (awareness of the factors influencing the accuracy and reliability of predictions (e.g. local weather conditions, flooding, local area knowledge, etc.)		
9.4.3	Use all appropriate nautical publications on tides and currents		
9.4.3.1	Nautical publications and information which can be obtained via internet and email on tides and currents		
9.4.3.1.1	uses tidal height calculations in passage planning, with regard to limiting draughts and times of available depth of water		
9.4.3.1.2	uses tidal stream information in passage planning, with regard to effect on course made good, and effect on speed and timing of events		
9.4.3.1.3	uses current information in passage planning, with regard to effect on course made good, and effect on speed and timing of events		
9.4.3.1.4	uses information which can be obtained via internet and email on tides and currents in passage/voyage planning		
9.5	Manoeuvre and handle a ship in all conditions		
9.5.1	Practical measures to be taken when navigating in or near ice or in conditions of ice accumulation on board		
9.5.1.1	states that all possible information about ice located on or in the vicinity of the intended track should be obtained		
9.5.1.2	states that information is available from: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - daily bulletins of the International Ice Patrol in the North Atlantic - ice warnings from countries where ice is a regular problem - Hydrographic Office ice charts - pilot books - facsimile ice charts - warnings from other ships in the vicinity 		
9.5.1.3	defines the following terms used in ice warnings: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - solid ice - soft ice - drift ice - pack ice - growler - iceberg 		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

9.5.1.4	states the Master's obligation to report dangerous ice or sub-freezing air temperatures associated with gale-force winds causing severe ice accretion on superstructures		
9.5.1.5	states that, when ice is reported on or near the course, the Master of every ship is bound to proceed at a moderate speed or to alter course so as to go well clear of the danger zone		
9.5.1.6	explains that radar may not detect small icebergs and growlers		
9.5.1.7	states that navigation marks may be removed without warning in coastal areas threatened by ice		
9.5.1.8	states that no attempt should be made to enter a region of thick ice in a ship not		
9.5.1.9	lists precautions to take when entering ice as: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - estimating the thickness and concentration of ice and assessing whether the ship can safely pass through it - avoiding entry to pressure areas (shown by hummocks and rafting) - following leads used by previous ships, where possible - entering on the lee side of the ice, if practicable - entering at right angles to the ice edge, to avoid damage to hull, propeller and rudder - approaching at as slow a speed as possible, and increasing the power to maintain headway when the bow contacts the ice 		
9.5.1.10	explains that leads through the ice show well on radar when set to short range		
9.5.1.11	explains precautions to be taken to avoid damaging the propeller and rudder when manoeuvring in ice		
9.5.1.12	explains how to obtain assistance from an ice-breaker		
9.5.1.13	states that it is important to follow the ice-breaker's instructions regarding speed and manoeuvring		
9.5.1.14	states that fenders should be ready for use when negotiating sharp turns in leads		
9.5.1.15	describes the precautions which should be taken to prevent freezing up of tail- end shafts, deck machinery and services		
9.5.1.16	describes how to heave-to in an ice field		
9.5.1.17	describes the need to keep a lookout, when hove-to at night, for large ice drifting through the pack		
9.5.1.18	states that soft ice may block seawater intakes		
9.5.1.19	describes the conditions in which ice accumulates on decks and superstructures		
9.5.1.20	explains the dangers resulting from heavy accumulation of ice		
9.5.1.21	states that a change of course or speed should be made to reduce the shipping of freezing spray		
9.5.1.22	states that accumulated ice and snow should be cleared away as quickly as possible		
8.5.1.23	describes methods of clearing decks, rigging and superstructure of ice		
9.5.2	Use of, and manoeuvring in and near, traffic separation schemes and in vessel traffic service (VTS) areas		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation

No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka

Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

9.5.2.1	explains the requirements of the International Regulations for preventing Collisions at Sea with respect to traffic separation schemes and narrow channels		
9.5.2.2	discusses the actions that can be taken to manoeuvre the vessel in case of emergency		
9.5.2.3	describes the information that may be required by VTS officers before entering, leaving or manoeuvring within a VTS controlled area		
9.5.2.4	plans manoeuvres in and near traffic separation schemes		
9.5.2.5	performs manoeuvres in and near traffic separation schemes		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

10. Stability (Total number of hours - 84)

Ref. No	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Duration	Course Notes ref. no.
10.1	Manoeuvre and Handle a Ship in all Conditions		
10.1.1	Dry-docking, both with and without damage	6.0	144
10.1.1.1	determines that the vessel has adequate statical stability for docking by calculation		
10.2	Plan and Ensure Safe Loading, Stowage, Securing, Care During the Voyage and Unloading of Cargoes		
10.2.1	Effect on trim and stability of cargoes and cargo operations	15.0	
10.2.1.1	Draught, trim and stability		
10.2.1.1.1	given the draughts forward, aft and amidships, calculates the draught to use with the deadweight scale, making allowance for trim, deflection and density of the water		33
	given a ship's hydrostatic data, the weight and the intended disposition of cargo, stores, fuel and water, calculates the draughts, allowing for trim, deflection and water density		115
10.2.1.1.2	<u>calculates changes of draught resulting from change in distribution of masses</u>		115
10.2.1.1.3	<u>calculates changes of draught resulting from change in water density</u>		06
10.2.1.1.4	<u>calculates the quantity of cargo to move between given locations to produce a required trim or maximum draught</u>		
10.2.1.1.5	<u>calculates how to divide a given mass between two given locations to produce a required trim or maximum draught after loading</u>		
10.2.1.1.6	<u>calculates the locations at which to load a given mass so as to leave the after draught unchanged given a ship's hydrostatic data and the disposition of cargo, fuel and water,</u>		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

10.2.1.1.7	<u>calculates the metacentric height (GM)</u>		
10.2.1.1.8	<u>calculates the arrival GM from the conditions at departure and the consumption of fuel and water</u>		
10.2.1.1.9	identifies when the ship will have the worst stability conditions during the passage		
10.2.1.1.10	calculates the maximum weight which can be loaded at a given height above the keel to ensure a given minimum GM		
10.2.1.1.11	<u>constructs a GZ curve for a given displacement and KG and checks that the ship meets the minimum intact stability requirements</u>		
10.2.1.1.12	<u>determines the list resulting from a change in distribution of masses</u>		
10.2.1.1.13	<u>determines the expected maximum heel during the loading or discharging of a heavy lift with the ship's gear</u>		
10.2.1.1.14	calculates the increased draught resulting from the heel		
10.2.1.1.15	<u>plans the loading and movement of cargo and other deadweight items to achieve specified draughts and/or stability conditions in terms of required statical and dynamic stability</u>		
10.2.2	Use of stability and trim diagrams and stress-calculating equipment including automatic data-based equipment and knowledge of loading cargoes and ballasting in order to keep hull stress within acceptable limits	8.0	176
10.2.2.1	Shear forces, bending moments and torsional moments		
10.2.2.1.1	states that the carriage of loading calculators in large ships carrying dry or liquid cargo in bulk is a requirement of the classification societies		
10.2.2.1.2	states that the maximum permissible values of shear force and bending moment in harbour and at sea are laid down by the classification societies		
10.2.2.1.3	states that maximum torsional moments are also laid down for some container ships		
10.2.2.1.4	describes the use of typical cargo loading instruments and lists the information obtainable from them		
10.2.2.1.5	interprets the information regarding stress limits provided to the ship		
10.2.2.1.6	explains that harbour stress limits should not be exceeded during loading, discharging or ballasting operations and that it is not sufficient just to finish within the limits		
10.2.2.1.7	explains that sufficient information to arrange for the loading and ballasting of		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

10.2.2.1.8	the ship in such a way as to avoid the creation of unacceptable stresses should be on board, unless the Administration considers it unnecessary for that ship plans the loading and discharge of a ship to ensure that maximum allowable stress limits are not exceeded		
10.2.2.2	Use of automatic data-based (ADB) equipment	1.0	184
10.2.2.2.1	provides an understanding of information obtained from ship stress indicators and loading programmes		
10.3.1	Interpret given figures for bending moments and shear forces	3.0	185
10.3.1.1	states that the bulk carriers are assigned 2 sets of permissible still water shear forces (SWSF) and still water bending moment (SWBM) limit to each ship, namely: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - seagoing (at sea) SWSF and SWBM limits - harbour (in port) SWSF and SWBM limits 		
10.3.1.2	states that the seagoing SWSF and SWBM limits should not be exceeded when the ship is put to sea or during any part of a seagoing voyage		
10.3.1.3	explains that in harbour, where the ship is in sheltered water and is subjected to reduced dynamic loads, the hull girder is permitted to carry a higher level of stress imposed by the static loads		
10.3.1.4	states that the harbour SWSF and SWBM limits should not be exceeded during any stage of harbour cargo operations		
10.3.1.5	explains that when a ship is floating in still water, the ship's lightweight (the weight of the ship's structure and its machinery) and deadweight (all other weights, such as the weight of the bunkers, ballast, provisions and cargo) are supported by the global buoyancy up thrust acting on the exterior of the hull		
10.3.1.6	explains that along the ship's length there will be local differences in the vertical forces of buoyancy and the ship's weight and these unbalanced net vertical forces acting along the length of the ship causes the hull girder to shear and to bend, inducing a vertical still water shear force (SWSF) and still water bending moment (SWBM) at each section of the hull		
10.3.1.7	explains that at sea, the ship is subjected to cyclical shearing and bending actions induced by continuously changing wave pressures acting on the hull		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

10.3.1.8	explains that these cyclical shearing and bending actions give rise to an additional component of dynamic, wave induced, shear force and bending moment in the hull girder		
10.3.1.9	explains that at any one time, the hull girder is subjected to a combination of still water and wave induced shear forces and bending moments		
10.3.1.10	explains that the stresses in the hull section caused by these shearing forces and bending moments are carried by continuous longitudinal structural members		
10.3.1.11	explains that these structural members are the strength deck, side shell and bottom shell plating and longitudinals, inner bottom plating and longitudinals, double bottom girders and topside and hopper tank sloping plating and longitudinals, which are generally defined as the hull girder		
10.3.1.12	states that over-loading will induce greater stresses in the double bottom, transverse bulkheads, hatch coamings, hatch corners, main frames and associated brackets of individual cargo holds, and it can be observed as: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - increased stress at hatch corners and coamings - increased stress in main frames and brackets - increased stress in double bottom structure - increased stress in transverse bulkhead - increased stress in cross deck strip - greater distortion of topside tank 		
10.3.1.13	states that exceeding the permissible limits specified in the ship's approved loading manual will lead to over-stressing of the ship's structure and may result in catastrophic failure of the hull structure		
10.3.1.14	states that when deviating from the cargo load conditions contained in the ship's approved loading manual, it is necessary to ensure that both the global and local structural limits are not exceeded		
10.3.1.15	explains that all officers should be aware over-stressing of local structural members can occur even when the hull girder still water shear forces (SWSF) and bending moments (SWBM) are within their permissible limits		
10.3.1.16	analyses and interprets the causes and effects of shearing forces and bending moments on ship's structures		
10.4	Control trim, stability & stress		
10.4.1	Fundamental principles of ship construction, trim and stability	30	
10.4.1.1	Stability		



Approximate calculation of areas and volumes		23
10.4.1.1.1	states the trapezoidal rule for the area under a curve in terms of the number of ordinates, the interval and the ordinate values	
10.4.1.1.2	<u>uses the trapezoidal rule to find the area under a curve defined by given ordinates</u>	
10.4.1.1.3	states Simpson's first rule as $A = h(y_1 + 4y_2 + y_3)/3$ where: A = area under curve h = interval length y ₁ , y ₂ , y ₃ are ordinates	
10.4.1.1.4	writes down the repeated first rule for any odd number of ordinates	
10.4.1.1.5	<u>uses Simpson's first rule to find the area under a curve defined by an odd number of ordinates</u>	
10.4.1.1.6	states that the area is exact for a linear, quadratic or cubic curve but an approximation otherwise	
10.4.1.1.7	states Simpson's second rule as $A = 3h(y_1 + 3y_2 + 3y_3 + y_4)/8$ where: A = area h = interval length y ₁ , y ₂ , y ₃ , y ₄ are ordinates	
	writes down the repeated second rule for 7,10,13, etc., ordinates	
10.4.1.1.8	<u>uses Simpson's second rule to find the area under a curve defined by a suitable number of given ordinates</u>	
10.4.1.1.9	states that the area is exact for linear, quadratic or cubic curves	
10.4.1.1.10	states that the first rule has smaller errors than the second and should be used	
10.4.1.1.11	in preference where possible states that errors can be reduced by using a smaller interval	
10.4.1.1.12	states the 5, 8, -1 rule as $A = h(5y_1 + 8y_2 - y_3)/12$	
10.4.1.1.13		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

<p>10.4.1.1.14</p> <p>10.4.1.1.15</p> <p>10.4.1.1.16</p> <p>10.4.1.1.17</p> <p>10.4.1.1.18</p> <p>10.4.1.1.19</p> <p>10.4.1.1.20</p> <p>10.4.1.1.21</p> <p>10.4.1.1.22</p> <p>10.4.1.1.23</p> <p>10.4.1.1.24</p> <p>10.4.1.1.25</p> <p>10.4.1.1.26</p> <p>10.4.1.1.27</p> <p>10.4.1.1.28</p> <p>10.4.1.1.29</p>	<p>where: A = area between first and second ordinates h = interval length y_1, y_2, y_3 are ordinates</p> <p><u>uses Simpson's rules to find the area under a curve defined by any number of ordinates</u> explains that the volume of a body may be calculated by using Simpson's rules with cross-sectional areas as ordinates <u>calculates the volume of a ship to a stated draught by applying Simpson's rules to given cross-sectional areas or waterplane areas</u> <u>uses Simpson's first, second and 5, 8, -1 rules to approximate areas and volumes of ship structure and GZ curves with any number of ordinates and intermediate ordinates</u></p> <p>Effects of density</p> <p><u>given the density of the water in the dock, calculates the displacement for a particular draught from the seawater displacement for that draught extracted from hydrostatic data</u> <u>calculates the TPC for given mean draught and density of the dock water</u> discusses the use of the Fresh Water Allowance and how to determine this for a ship states that FWA only applies when the ship is floating at or near its summer load line explains why the density of the water in the dock should be taken at the same time as the draughts are read describes the static and dynamic effects on stability of the movement of liquids with a free surface <u>calculates the virtual reduction in GM for liquids with a free surface in spaces with rectangular and triangular waterplanes</u> deduces from the above objective that halving the breadth of a tank reduces the free surface effect to one eighth of its original value deduces that the subdividing a tank at the centre reduces its free surface effect to one quarter of that of the undivided tank states that the quantity 'inertia x density of liquid' is called the 'free surface moment' of the tank, in tonne-metres states that information for calculating free surface effect is included in tank capacity tables states that the information may be given in one of the following ways: - inertia in metre⁴</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">06</p>	
---	---	--	--



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@sltnet.lk

<p>10.4.1.1.30</p> <p>10.4.1.1.31</p> <p>10.4.1.1.32</p> <p>10.4.1.1.33</p> <p>10.4.1.1.34</p> <p>10.4.1.1.35</p> <p>10.4.1.1.36</p> <p>10.4.1.1.37</p> <p>10.4.1.1.38</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - free surface moments for a stated density of liquid in the tank - as a loss of GM, in tabulated form for a range of draughts (displacements) for a stated density of liquid in the tank <p><u>corrects free surface moments when a tank contains a liquid of different density from that stated in the capacity table given a ship's displacement and the contents of its tanks, uses the information from ship's stability information to calculate the loss of GM due to slack tanks</u></p> <p><u>given a ship's departure conditions and the daily consumption of fuel, water and stores, calculates the GM allowing for free surfaces on arrival at destination</u></p> <p>Stability at moderate and large angles of heel</p> <p>states that the formula $GZ = GM \sin\theta$ does not hold for angles in excess of about 10°</p> <p>states that the initial KM is calculated from</p> $KM = KB + BM$ <p>uses a metacentric diagram to obtain values of KM, KB and BM for given draughts</p> <p>states that the transverse $BM = I/V$</p> <p>where:</p> <p>I = second moment of area of the waterplane about the centre line; V = underwater volume of the ship</p> <p>states that for a rectangular waterplane</p> $I = LB^3/12$ <p>where:</p> <p>L is the length of the waterplane; B is the breadth of the waterplane</p> <p>shows that, for a box-shaped vessel,</p> $KM = (B^2/12d) + (d/2)$	<p>46</p>
---	--	-----------



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

<p>10.4.1.1.39</p> <p>10.4.1.1.40</p> <p>10.4.1.1.41</p> <p>10.4.1.1.42</p> <p>10.4.1.1.43</p> <p>10.4.1.1.44</p> <p>10.4.1.1.45</p> <p>10.4.1.1.46</p> <p>10.4.1.1.47</p> <p>10.4.1.1.48</p> <p>10.4.1.1.49</p> <p>10.4.1.1.50</p> <p>10.4.1.1.51</p>	<p>where: d = draught</p> <p>states that, for moderate and large angles of heel, values of GZ found by calculating the position of the centre of buoyancy are provided by the shipbuilder for a range of displacements and angles of heel for an assumed position of the centre of gravity</p> <p><u>uses cross-curves of stability and KN curves to construct a curve of statical stability for a given displacement and value of KG, making correction for any free surface moments</u></p> <p>explains how to use the initial metacentric height as an aid to drawing the curve</p> <p>identifies from the curve the approximate angle at which the deck edge immerses</p> <p>describes the effect of increased freeboard on the curve of statical stability for a ship with the same initial GM</p> <p>states that the righting lever, GZ, may be found from the wall-sided formula up to the angle at which the deck edge is immersed <u>given the wall-sided formula:</u></p> <p><u>$GZ = (GM + BM/2\tan^2\Theta) \sin$</u> and other relevant data, calculates the value of GZ for a stated angle of heel</p> <p>shows that, for small angles of heel, the term $BM/2\tan^2\Theta$ is negligible, leading to the usual expression for GZ at small angles of heel</p> <p>uses the wall-sided formula for calculating the angle of loll of an initially unstable ship</p> <p>states that cross-curves and KN curves are drawn for the ship with its centre of gravity on the centre line</p> <p>demonstrates how to adjust the curve of statical stability for a ship with a list</p> <p>describes the effect when heeled to the listed side on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - the maximum righting moment - the angle of vanishing stability - the range of stability <p>states that cross-curves and KN curves are drawn for the ship at the designed trim when upright</p> <p>states that righting levers may differ from those shown if the ship has a large trim when upright</p> <p>Simplified stability data</p>		
--	---	--	--



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

<p>10.4.1.1.52</p> <p>10.4.1.1.53</p> <p>10.4.1.1.54</p> <p>10.4.1.1.55</p> <p>10.4.1.1.56</p> <p>10.4.1.1.57</p> <p>10.4.1.1.58</p> <p>10.4.1.1.59</p> <p>10.4.1.1.60</p>	<p>states that stability information may be supplied in a simplified form, consisting of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - a diagram or table of maximum deadweight moment - a diagram or table of minimum permissible GM - a diagram or table of maximum permissible KG all related to the displacement or draught in salt water <p>states that a deadweight moment is mass in tonnes x vertical height of the mass above the keel</p> <p>states that free surface moments are to be added to the deadweight moments when using the diagram of maximum deadweight moment</p> <p>states that if, for a stated displacement or draught, the total deadweight moment or KG is less than the maximum permissible value, the ship will have adequate stability</p> <p><u>reads the maximum permissible deadweight moment from a curve of deadweight moment for a given displacement given the masses loaded, their heights above the keel and the free surface moments of slack tanks, calculates the deadweight moment and uses the result with the diagram of deadweight moment to determine if the stability is adequate.</u></p> <p><u>uses the diagram of deadweight moment to calculate the maximum mass that can be loaded in a given position to ensure adequate stability during a voyage, making allowance for the fuel, water and stores consumed and for any resulting free surface</u></p> <p>states that curves of maximum KG or minimum GM to ensure adequate stability in the event of partial loss of intact buoyancy are provided in passenger ships</p>		<p>66</p>
<p>10.4.1.1.61</p> <p>10.4.1.1.62</p> <p>10.4.1.1.63</p> <p>10.4.1.1.64</p> <p>10.4.1.1.65</p>	<p>Trim and list</p> <p>defines longitudinal centre of gravity (LCG) and longitudinal centre of buoyancy (LCB)</p> <p>states that a ship trims about the centre of flotation until LCG and LCB are in the same vertical line</p> <p>states that the distance of the LCB from amidships or from the after perpendicular is given in a ship's hydrostatic data for the ship on an even keel</p> <p>explains that the LCG must be at the same distance from amidships as LCB when the ship floats on an even keel</p> <p>shows on a diagram of a ship constrained to an even keel the couple that is formed by the weight and buoyancy forces when LCG is not the same distance from amidships as LCB</p>		<p>8 & 115</p>



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

10.4.1.1.66	states that the trimming moment = displacement x the horizontal distance between LCB (tabulated) and LCG (actual) = $\Delta \times GG_1$		
	where GG ₁ is the horizontal distance between the position of LCG for the even-keel condition and the actual LCG		
	states that trim = $(\Delta \times GG_1)/MCT 1 \text{ cm}$		
10.4.1.1.67	states that if the actual LCG is abaft the tabulated position of LCB, then the trim will be by the stern, and vice versa		
10.4.1.1.68	<u>given the initial displacement, initial position of LCG, masses loaded or discharged and their LCGs, calculates the final position of LCG</u>		
10.4.1.1.69	<u>using a ship's hydrostatic data and a given disposition of cargo, fuel, water and stores, determines the trim, the mean draught and the draughts at each end</u> <u>calculates the mass to move between given positions to produce a required trim or draught at one end</u> <u>calculates where to load a given mass to produce a required trim or draught at one end</u>		
10.4.1.1.70	<u>calculates how to divide a loaded or discharged mass between two positions to produce a required trim</u>		
10.4.1.1.71	<u>or draught at one end</u>		
10.4.1.1.72	<u>calculates where to load a mass so as to keep the after draught constant</u>		
	states that calculated draughts refer to draughts at the perpendiculars		
10.4.1.1.73	given the distance of draught marks from the perpendiculars and the length between perpendiculars,		
10.4.1.1.74	corrects the draughts indicated by the marks		
10.4.1.1.75	given draughts forward, aft and amidships, states whether or not the ship is hogged or sagged and the amount		
10.4.1.1.76	corrects the draught amidships for hog or sag given the forward and after draughts, the length between perpendiculars and hydrostatic data, calculates		
10.4.1.1.77	the correction for trim to apply to the displacement corresponding to the draught amidships		
10.4.1.1.78	states that a second correction for trim, using Nemoto's formula, may be applied to the displacement given Nemoto's formula, calculates the second correction to displacement		
10.4.1.1.79	<u>calculates the maximum list during loading or discharging a heavy lift, using a ship's derrick, given the</u>		
10.4.1.1.80	<u>relevant stability information and the dimensions of the derrick</u>		
10.4.1.1.81	<u>calculates the minimum GM required to restrict the list to a stated maximum</u>		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

10.4.1.1.82	<u>when loading or discharging a heavy lift</u> <u>calculates the quantities of fuel oil or ballast to move between given locations to simultaneously correct a list and achieve a desired trim</u>		
10.4.1.1.83	explains how to distinguish between list and loll and describes how to return the ship to the upright in each case		
10.4.1.1.84	<u>by making use of curves of statical stability, including those for ships with zero or negative initial GM, determines the equilibrium angle of heel resulting from a transverse moment of mass</u>		
10.4.1.1.85	Dynamical stability		
10.4.1.1.86	defines dynamical stability at any angle of heel as the work done in inclining the ship to that angle states that the dynamical stability at any angle is given by the product of displacement and the area under the curve of statical stability up to that angle		
10.4.1.1.87	<u>given a curve of statical stability, uses Simpson's rules to find the area in metre-radians up to a stated angle</u>		85
10.4.1.1.88	states that dynamical stability is usually expressed in tonne-metres explains that the dynamical stability at a given angle of heel represents the potential energy of the ship		
10.4.1.1.89	states that the potential energy is used partly in overcoming resistance to rolling and partly in producing rotational energy as the ship returns to the upright		
10.4.1.1.90	states that the rotational energy when the ship is upright causes it to continue rolling		
10.4.1.1.91	states that, in the absence of other disturbing forces, the ship will roll to an angle where the sum of the energy used in overcoming resistance to rolling and the dynamical stability are equal to the rotational energy when upright		
10.4.1.1.92	states that a beam wind exerts a force equal to the wind pressure multiplied by the projected lateral area of the portion of the ship and deck cargo above the waterline		
10.4.1.1.93	explains that a heeling moment is formed, equal to the force of the wind multiplied by the vertical separation between the centres of the lateral areas of the portions of the ship above and below the waterline		
10.4.1.1.94	states that the heeling lever equals the heeling moment divided by the ship's displacement		
10.4.1.1.95	states that a steady wind will cause a ship to heel to an angle at which the righting lever is equal to the heeling over		
10.4.1.1.96			



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

<p>10.4.1.1.97</p> <p>10.4.1.1.98</p> <p>10.4.1.1.99</p> <p>10.4.1.1.100</p> <p>10.4.1.1.101</p> <p>10.4.1.1.102</p> <p>10.4.1.1.103</p> <p>10.4.1.1.104</p> <p>10.4.1.1.105</p> <p>10.4.1.1.106</p> <p>10.4.1.1.107</p>	<p>states that a ship under the action of a steady wind would roll about the resulting angle of heel on a curve of righting levers, indicates the angle of equilibrium under the action of a steady wind and the areas which represent the dynamical stability at angles of roll to each side of the equilibrium position by reference to dynamical stability, describes the effect of an increase in wind pressure when a vessel is at its maximum angle of roll to windward</p> <p>summarizes the recommendation on severe wind and rolling criterion for the intact stability of passenger and cargo ships by reference to a curve of righting levers and dynamical stability, describes the effect of a listing moment on the rolling of the ship about the equilibrium position</p> <p>Approximate GM by means of rolling period tests</p> <p>defines the rolling period as the time taken for one complete oscillation from the extreme end of a roll to one side, right across to the extreme on the other side and back to the original position</p> <p>states that when construction is completed, a ship undergoes an inclining test to determine the displacement and position of the centre of gravity, KG and LCG, in the light ship condition</p> <p>states that the displacement and KM are calculated from the observed draughts and the ship's lines plans, making allowance for density of water and trim</p> <p>states that the position of the centre of buoyancy is calculated to enable the LCG for the light ship to be determined</p> <p>describes how an inclining test is carried out</p> <p>given the mass and the distance through which it was moved, the displacement, length of the plumb line and the deflection, calculates the KG</p> <p>states that the values obtained in a test are corrected for masses to be removed and added to obtain the KG and LCG for the light ship</p> <p>states that, at periodical intervals not exceeding five years, a light ship survey must be carried out on all passenger ships to verify any changes in light ship displacement and longitudinal centre of gravity</p> <p>states that the ship must be re-inclined whenever, in comparison with the approved stability information, a deviation from the light ship displacement exceeding 2% or a deviation of the longitudinal centre of gravity exceeding 1 % of L is found or anticipated</p> <p>Intact Stability Code</p>	<p>105</p>
--	--	-------------------



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

<p>10.4.1.1.120</p> <p>10.4.1.1.121</p> <p>10.4.1.1.122</p> <p>10.4.1.1.123</p> <p>10.4.1.1.124</p> <p>10.4.1.1.125</p> <p>10.4.1.1.126</p> <p>10.4.1.1.127</p> <p>10.4.1.1.128</p> <p>10.4.1.1.129</p> <p>10.4.1.1.130</p> <p>10.4.1.1.131</p> <p>10.4.1.1.132</p> <p>10.4.1.1.133</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - typical loaded service departure and arrival conditions and, where necessary, intermediate worst service conditions - a worked example for the guidance of the Master - loading instructions in the form of notes summarizing the requirements of SOLAS chapter VI <p>explains what are volumetric heeling moments</p> <p>states that heeling moment = volumetric heeling moment / stowage factor</p> <p>states how the vertical shift of grain surfaces is taken into account in filled compartments and in partly filled compartments</p> <p><u>calculates the heeling arm, λ_o, from:</u> $\lambda_o = \text{Volumetric heeling moment} / (\text{stowage factor} \times \text{displacement})$</p> <p><u>draws the heeling-arm curve on the righting-arm curve for a given ship and KG, corrected for free surface liquid, and:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - <u>determines the angle of heel</u> - <u>using Simpson's rules, calculates the residual dynamical stability to the angle laid down by regulation 4 of SOLAS chapter VI</u> <p><u>compares the results of the calculations in the above objective with the criteria set out in regulation 4 and states whether the ship complies with the requirements or does not comply</u></p> <p>Rolling of ships</p> <p>describes the effect on GM of rolling</p> <p>explains how increase of draught and of displacement influence rolling</p> <p>describes how the distribution of mass within the ship affects the rolling period</p> <p>explains what synchronization is and the circumstances in which it is most likely to occur</p> <p>describes the actions to take if synchronization is experienced</p> <p>describes how bilge keels, anti-rolling tanks and stabilizer fins reduce the amplitude of rolling</p> <p>states that a ship generally heels when turning</p> <p>states that, while turning, the ship is subject to an acceleration towards the centre of the turn</p> <p>states that the force producing the acceleration acts at the underwater centre of lateral resistance, which is situated at about half-draught above the keel</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">75</p>
---	---	---------------------------------------



10.4.1.1.134	states that the force in the above objective is called the centripetal force, given by $F = \frac{Mv^2}{r}$	105
10.4.1.1.135	where: M = mass of the ship in tonnes v = speed in metres per second r = radius of turn in metres F = centripetal force in kilonewtons	
10.4.1.1.136	explains how the force acting at the centre of lateral resistance can be replaced by an equal force acting through the centre of gravity and a heeling couple equal to the force x vertical separation between the centre of lateral resistance and the centre of gravity, $\frac{MV^2}{r} \left[KG - \frac{d}{2} \right] \cos \theta$	
10.4.1.1.137	states that the ship will heel until the resulting righting moment equals the heeling couple, i.e. $M \times g \times GM \sin \theta = \frac{MV^2}{r} \left[KG - \frac{d}{2} \right] \cos \theta$ where: g = acceleration due to gravity θ = angle of heel	
10.4.1.1.138	<u>given the relevant data, calculates the angle of heel from</u> $\tan \theta = \frac{V^2 \times \left[KG - \frac{d}{2} \right]}{g \times GM \times r}$ Dry-docking and grounding states that for dry-docking a ship should:	



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

10.4.1.1.139	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - have adequate initial metacentric height - be upright - have a small or moderate trim, normally by the stern <p>states that part of the weight is taken by the blocks as soon as the ship touches, reducing the buoyancy force by the same amount</p>		
10.4.1.1.140	<p>states that the upthrust at the stern causes a virtual loss of metacentric height</p> <p>explains why the GM must remain positive until the critical instant at which the ship takes the blocks overall</p>		
10.4.1.1.141	<p>derives the formula for the up thrust at the stern</p>		
10.4.1.1.142	$P = \frac{(MCT \times t)}{L}$		
10.4.1.1.143	<p>where:</p> <p>P = upthrust at the stern in tonnes</p> <p>t = change of trim in cm</p> <p>L = distance of the centre of flotation from aft</p>		
10.4.1.1.144	<p>explains that a ship with a large trim will develop a large upthrust, which may damage the stern frame, trip the blocks or lead to an unstable condition before taking the blocks overall by taking moments about the centre of buoyancy, shows that, for a small angle of heel, θ,</p> $\text{righting moment} = \Delta \times GM \sin\theta - P \times KM \sin\theta$ <p>where</p> <p>GM is the initial metacentric height when afloat</p>		144
10.4.1.1.145	<p>shows that the righting lever is that for the ship with its metacentric height reduced by $\frac{(P \times KM)}{\Delta}$</p> <p>by using the equation in the above objective and $KM + KG + GM$, shows that righting moment = $(\Delta - P) \times GM \sin\theta - P \times KG \sin\theta$</p>		
10.4.1.1.146	<p>shows that the righting lever is that for a ship of displacement $(\Delta - P)$ and with metacentric height reduced by $\frac{(P \times KG)}{\Delta - P}$</p>		
10.4.1.1.149	$\frac{(P \times KG)}{\Delta - P}$		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

10.4.1.1.148	explains that the righting moment remains positive providing $\Delta \times GM$ is greater than $P \times KM$ or equivalently, $(\Delta - P) \times GM$ is greater than $P \times KG$ <u>calculates the minimum GM to ensure that the ship remains stable at the point of taking the blocks overall</u>		
10.4.1.1.149	<u>calculates the maximum trim to ensure that the ship remains stable on taking the blocks overall for a given GM</u>		
10.4.1.1.150	<u>calculates the virtual loss of GM and the draughts of the ship after the level has fallen by a stated amount</u>		
10.4.1.1.151	<u>calculates the draughts on taking the blocks overall</u>		
10.4.1.1.152	explains that the stability of a ship aground at one point on the centre line is reduced in the same way as in dry-docking		
10.4.1.1.153	states that when grounding occurs at an off-centre point, the up thrust causes heel as well as trim and reduction of GM		
10.4.1.1.154	explains that the increase in upthrust as the tide falls increases the heeling moment and reduces the stability		
10.4.1.1.155	Shear force, bending moments and torsional stress		
	explains what is meant by shearing stress		
10.4.1.1.156	states that the shear force at a given point of a simply supported beam is equal to the algebraic sum of the forces to one side of that point		
10.4.1.1.157	explains that, for a beam in equilibrium, the sum of forces to one side of a point is equal to the sum of the forces on the other side with the sign reversed		
10.4.1.1.158	explains what is meant by a bending moment		
10.4.1.1.159	states that the bending moment at a given point of a beam is the algebraic sum of the moment of force acting to one side of that point		
10.4.1.1.160	states that the bending moment measured to opposite sides of a point are numerically equal but opposite in sense		
10.4.1.1.161	<u>draws a diagram of shear force and bending moment for simply supported beams</u>		
10.4.1.1.162	states that the bending moment at any given point is equal to the area under the shear-force curve to that point		
10.4.1.1.163	uses the above objective to show that the bending-moment curve has a turning point where the shear		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

10.4.1.1.164	force has zero value explains that shear forces and bending moments arise from differences between weight and buoyancy per unit length of the ship		
10.4.1.1.165	states that the differences between buoyancy and weight is called the load <u>draws a load curve from a given buoyancy curve and weight curve</u>		
10.4.1.1.166	states that the shear force at any given point is equal to the area under the loadcurve between the origin and that point		
10.4.1.1.167			
10.4.1.1.168	<u>draws a diagram of shear force and bending moment for a given distribution of weight for a box-shaped vessel</u>		
10.4.1.1.169	explains how wave profile affects the shear-force curve and bending-moment curve states that each ship above a specified length is required to carry a loading manual, in which are set out acceptable loading patterns to keep shear forces and bending moments within acceptable limits		
10.4.1.1.170			
10.4.1.1.171	states that the classification society may also require a ship to carry an approved means of calculating shear forces and bending moment at stipulated stations		
10.4.1.1.172	states that the loading manual and instrument, where provided, should be used to ensure that shear forces and bending moments do not exceed the permissible limits in still water during cargo and ballast handling		
10.4.1.1.173	explains what is meant by a torsional stress describes how torsional stresses in the hull are set up		
10.4.1.1.174	states that wave-induced torsional stresses are allowed for in the design of the ship		
10.4.1.1.175	states that cargo-induced torsional stresses are a problem mainly in container ships		
10.4.1.1.176	states that classification societies specify maximum permissible torsional moments at a number of specified cargo bays		
10.4.1.1.177			
10.4.1.1.178	describes the likelihood of overstressing the hull structure when loading certain bulk cargoes		
10.4.1.1.179			
10.4.2	Effect on trim and stability in the event of damage and flooding	12.0	192
10.4.2.1	Effect of flooding on transverse stability and trim Passenger vessels		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

<p>10.4.2.1.1</p> <p>10.4.2.1.2</p> <p>10.4.2.1.3</p> <p>10.4.2.1.4</p> <p>10.4.2.1.5</p> <p>10.4.2.1.6</p> <p>10.4.2.1.7</p> <p>10.4.2.1.8</p> <p>10.4.2.1.9</p> <p>10.4.2.1.10</p> <p>10.4.2.1.11</p> <p>10.4.2.1.12</p> <p>10.4.2.1.13</p> <p>10.4.2.1.14</p> <p>10.4.2.1.15</p>	<p>explains what is meant by ‘floodable length’</p> <p>defines:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - margin line - bulkhead deck - permeability of a space <p>explains what is meant by ‘permissible length of compartments’ in passenger ships</p> <p>describes briefly the significance of the Criterion of Service Numeral</p> <p>explains the significance of the factor of subdivision</p> <p>states the assumed extent of damage used in assessing the stability of passenger ships in damaged condition</p> <p>summarizes, with reference to the factor of subdivision, the extent of damage which a passenger ship should withstand</p> <p>describes the provisions for dealing with asymmetrical flooding</p> <p>states the requirements for the final condition of the ship after assumed damage and, where applicable, equalization of flooding</p> <p>states that the Master is supplied with data necessary to maintain sufficient intact stability to withstand the critical damage</p> <p>Cargo ships</p> <p>distinguishes between ships of Type A and Type B for the purpose of computation of freeboard</p> <p>describes the extent of damage that a Type A ship of over 150m in length should be able to withstand</p> <p>describes the requirements for the survivability of Type B ships with reduced assigned freeboard</p> <p>summarizes the equilibrium conditions regarded as satisfactory after flooding</p> <p>states that damage to compartments may cause a ship to sink as a result of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - insufficient reserve buoyancy leading to progressive flooding - progressive flooding due to excessive list or trim - capsizing due to a loss of stability - structural failure <p>Calculation of vessel condition after flooding</p>	<p>196</p>
---	---	-------------------



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

10.4.2.1.16	states that, in the absence of hull damage, the stability is calculated in the usual way using the added mass and making allowance for free surface liquid		
10.4.2.1.17	states that free surface moments for any rectangular compartment that is flooded by salt water can be approximated by		
	moment = length x (breadth) ³ x 1.025 / 12		
10.4.2.1.18	states that virtual loss of GM = $\frac{\text{moment}}{\text{flooded displacement}}$		
10.4.2.1.19	states that when a compartment is holed the ship will sink deeper in the water until the intact volume displaces water equivalent to the mass of the ship and its contents		
10.4.2.1.20	explains that the loss of buoyancy of a holed compartment is equal to the mass of water which enters the compartment up to the original waterline		
10.4.2.1.21	states that the volume of lost buoyancy for a loaded compartment is equal to the volume of the compartment x the permeability of the compartment		
10.4.2.1.22	<u>calculates the permeability of cargo, given its density and its stowage factor</u>		
10.4.2.1.23	states that if the lost buoyancy is greater than the reserve buoyancy the ship will sink		
10.4.2.1.24	states that the centre of buoyancy moves to the centre of immersed volume of the intact portion of the ship		
10.4.2.1.25	states that when a compartment is holed the ship's displacement and its centre of gravity are unchanged		
10.4.2.1.26	explains that a heeling arm is produced, equal to the transverse separation of G and the new position of B for the upright ship		
10.4.2.1.27	states that the area of intact waterplane is reduced by the area of the flooded spaces at the level of the flooded waterline multiplied by the permeability of the space		
10.4.2.1.28	states that if the flooded space is entirely below the waterline there is no reduction in intact waterplane		
10.4.2.1.29	<u>calculates the increase in mean draught of a ship, given the TPC and the dimensions of the flooded space, using increase in draught</u> $= \frac{\text{volume of lost buoyancy}}{\text{area of intact water plane}}$		
10.4.2.1.30	states that the height of the centre of buoyancy above the keel increases by about half the increase in draught due to flooding		
10.4.2.1.31	states that a reduction in waterplane area leads to a reduction in the second moment of area (I)		



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@sltnet.lk

10.4.2.1.32	uses the formula $BM = I/V$ to explain why the BM of a ship is generally less when bilged than when intact		
10.4.2.1.33	states that change in GM is the net result of changes in KB and BM		
10.4.2.1.34	explains why the GM usually decreases where: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - there is a large loss of intact waterplane - there is intact buoyancy below the flooded space - the flooded surface has a high permeability 		
10.4.2.1.35	explains why the bilging of empty double-bottom tanks or of deep tanks that are wholly below the waterline leads to an increase in GM		
10.4.2.1.36	calculates the reduction in BM resulting from lost area of the waterplane, given the following corrections: <u>second moment of lost area about its centroid / displaced volume; this is</u> $\frac{Lb^3}{12 V}$ for a rectangular surface where: L is length of the lost area b is breadth of the lost area V is displaced volume = Δ / density of water original waterplane area / intact waterplane area x lost area x (distance from centreline) ² / displaced volume this is original water plane area / intact water plane area x L x b x d ² / V for a rectangular surface, where d is the distance of the centre of the area from the centreline		
10.4.2.1.37	calculates the shift (F) of the centre of flotation (CE) from the centreline, using $F = \frac{a \times d}{A - a}$		



	<p>where: a is the lost area of waterplane A is the original waterplane area d is the distance of the centre of lost area of waterplane from the centreline</p> <p>10.4.2.1.38 shows that the heeling arm is given by heeling arm = lost buoyancy (tonnes)/displacement x transverse distance from new CF</p> <p>10.4.2.1.39 constructs a GZ curve for the estimated GM and superimposes the heeling-arm curve to determine the approximate angle of heel</p> <p>10.4.2.1.40 <u>uses wall-sided formula to determine GZ values</u></p> <p>10.4.2.1.41 <u>uses wall-sided formula to calculate angle of heel</u></p> <p>10.4.2.1.42 states that, for small angles of heel, θ, $\tan\theta = \frac{\text{heeling arm}}{\text{GM}}$</p> <p>10.4.2.1.43 explains how lost area of waterplane affects the position of the centre of flotation</p> <p>Effect of flooding on trim</p> <p>10.4.2.1.44 <u>calculates the movement of the centre of flotation (CF), given: movement of CF = moment of lost area about original CF/intact waterplane area</u></p> <p>10.4.2.1.45 explains how the reduction in intact waterplane reduces the MCT 1cm</p> <p>10.4.2.1.46 <u>calculates the reduction of BML, given the following corrections:</u></p> <p>second moment of lost area about its centroids / displaced volume;</p> <p>this is $bL^3 / 12 V$ for a rectangular surface</p> <p>where: L is length of lost area b is breadth of lost area V is displaced volume = displacement / density of water</p>		154
--	--	--	------------



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation
No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka
 Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

<p>10.4.2.1.47</p> <p>10.4.2.1.48</p> <p>10.4.2.1.49</p>	<p>Original waterplane area / intact waterplane area x lost area x (distance from CF)²/displaced volume</p> <p>This is original waterplane area/intact waterplane area x bId² / v</p> <p><u>for a rectangular surface, where d is the distance of the centre of area from the original centre of flotation calculates the reduction of MCT 1cm, given, reduction of MCT 1cm =(displacement x reduction of GM)/100 x ship's length</u></p> <p>states that the trimming moment is calculated from: trimming moment = lost buoyancy x distance from new CF</p> <p>where the lost buoyancy is measured in tonnes</p> <p><u>given the dimensions of a bilged space and the ship's hydrostatic data, calculates the draughts in the damaged condition</u></p> <p>describes measures which may be taken to improve the stability or trim of a damaged ship</p>		
<p>10.4.3</p> <p>10.4.3.1</p> <p>10.4.3.2</p> <p>10.4.3.3</p> <p>10.4.3.4</p> <p>10.4.3.5</p> <p>10.4.3.6</p> <p>10.4.3.7</p> <p>10.4.3.8</p> <p>10.4.3.9</p> <p>10.4.3.10</p> <p>10.4.3.11</p> <p>10.4.3.12</p> <p>10.4.3.13</p>	<p>Theories affecting trim and stability</p> <p>describes the static and dynamic effects on stability of liquids with a free surface</p> <p>identifies free surface moments and shows its application to dead-weight moment curves</p> <p>interprets changes in stability which take place during a voyage</p> <p>describes effect on stability of ice formation on superstructure</p> <p>describes the effect of water absorption by deck cargo and retention of water on deck</p> <p>describes stability requirements for dry-docking</p> <p>demonstrates understanding of angle of loll</p> <p>states precautions to be observed in correction of angle of loll</p> <p>explains the dangers to a vessel at an angle of loll</p> <p>describes effects of wind and waves on ships stability</p> <p>lists the main factors which affect the rolling period of a vessel</p> <p>explains the terms synchronous and parametric rolling and pitching and describes the dangers associated with it</p> <p>describes the actions that can be taken to stop synchronous and parametric effects</p>	<p>6.0</p>	
<p>10.4.4</p>	<p>Knowledge of IMO recommendations concerning ship stability</p>	<p>3.0</p>	



DEMOCRATIC SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF SRI LANKA
MERCHANT SHIPPING SECRETARIAT
Ministry of Ports & Civil Aviation

No.79, Technical Junction, Maradana Road, Colombo 10, Sri Lanka

Telephone: +94(0)112435127, Fax: +94-(0) 112430277, E-mail: dmsmos@slt.net.lk

10.4.4.1	Responsibilities under the international conventions and codes		
10.4.4.1.1	states minimum stability requirements required by Load Line Rules 1966		
10.4.4.1.2	states the minimum stability requirements and recommendations of the Intact Stability Code		
10.4.4.1.3	explains the use of the weather criterion		
10.4.4.1.4	demonstrates correct use of IMO grain regulations		
10.4.4.1.5	explains how grain heeling moment information is used		